

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

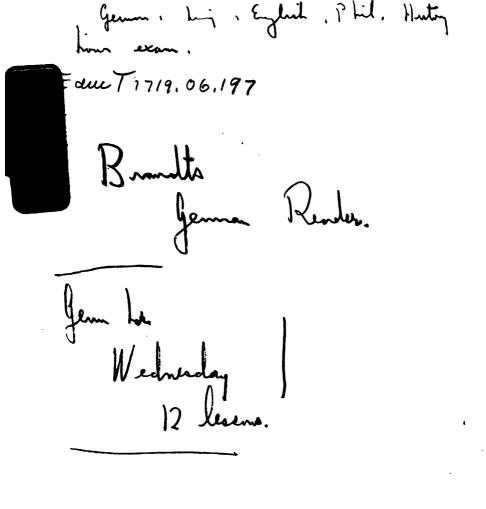
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + Keep it legal Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

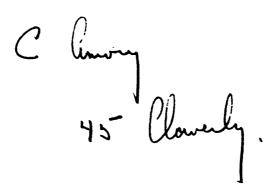
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/

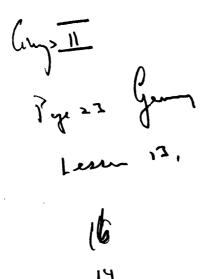






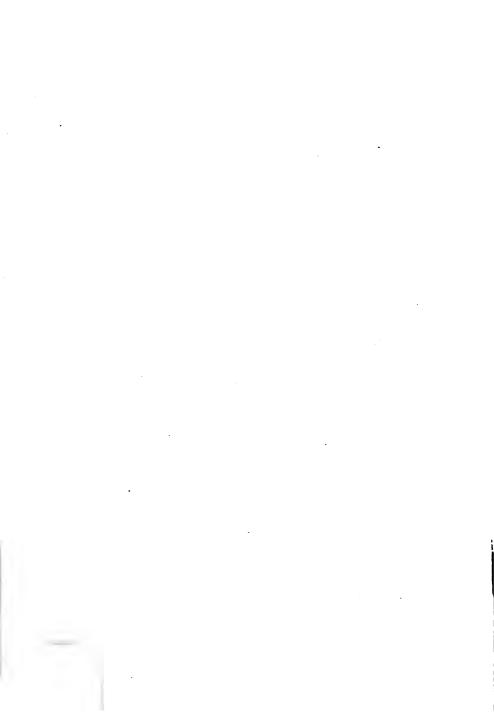












BEGINNING GERMAN

A SERIES OF LESSONS

WITH AN

ABSTRACT OF GRAMMAR

BY

H. C. BIERWIRTH, PH.D. Assistant Professor of German in Harvard College



NEW YORK HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

1000

Educ T1719.06.197

1

1

٠



COPYRIGHT, 1003, BY HENRY HOLT & CO.

۳.,

1

PREFACE

THIS book consists of a series of thirty lessons and an abstract of grammar.

On the lessons and the best way of using them, I have only a few suggestions to make, and these I will venture to put in a somewhat categorical form.

First, have your students recite as much as possible with their books closed. Secondly, dictate a few sentences or phrases to them at every lesson. Thirdly, postpone sentence writing and so-called composition until the ear is fairly well trained and the new language has become *alive* in the student's mind. And fourthly, before your scholars do an English exercise, let them carefully reread the preceding German sentences that should serve them as models.

I may add that these suggestions are neither original nor novel, and I dare say that if they had been followed more closely since the Committee of Twelve lent them the weight of their authority, fewer candidates for admission to college would be found deficient in the translation into German, and most would do better in the translation of German into English. The fact is that, notwithstanding all our conceits to the contrary, we are still too much under the sway of the traditional methods of teaching the *dead* languages.

In the second part of the book, the abstract of grammar, I have so far departed from the customary way of presenting

the subject of accidence that I must needs give my reason for doing so. It is this: if the initial difficulty for most English-speaking students of German lies in mastering the inflections, rather than in grasping the uses of the parts of speech, or what we call syntax, it ought to be more practical to group different parts of speech under the same type of inflection than to group different types of inflection under the same part of speech. The former is the method that I have followed. The latter is again a traditional method, that of logicians; but it is not necessarily the best, nor even the most rational method, even if it be the most logical.

The abstract of grammar, if it should prove useful for reviewing the essentials of accidence and syntax, especially in preparation for college, will soon be published separately.

I have adopted the new official orthography of 1902, hence the change of form in a few familiar words, as tun, tat, getan, Tur, gibit, etc., instead of thun, that, gethan, Thur, gibit, etc.

CAMBRIDGE, MASS., January, 1903.

CONTENTS

BEGINNING GERMAN

ņ

١.

ÿ

| | NCIATION | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 1-8 |
|-------|----------------------------|-----------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|------|--------------|
| GERMA | AN SCRIPT | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 9 –10 |
| LESSO | NS | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 11-103 |
| 1 | Present and Past Indicati | ive of W | eak V | 7erbs | | • | • | • | 11 |
| 2 | Present and Past Indicati | ve of Sta | rong` | Verbs | | • | • | • | 14 |
| 3 | Present and Past Indicati | ve of Ha | aben (| Sein 🛛 | Werd | en | • | • 2 | 17 |
| | | Order | of W | ords. | • | • | • | . \$ | 11 |
| 4 | The Definite Article Der. | Nouns | s: Cla | 188 I | • | • | • | • | 20 |
| 5 | Words like Der. Nouns | : Class I | Ι | • | • | • | • | • | 24 |
| 6 | The Indefinite Article Gin | n and its | s Grou | ıp | • | | | • | 27 |
| 7 | Nouns: Class III. Prepo | ositions | with] | Dative | or . | Accus | ative | • | 81 |
| 8 | Nouns: Class IV. Perso | nal Pror | nouns | | • | • | | • | 35 |
| 9 | The Pronouns Der Wer | Was. S | ubsti | tutes | • | • | • | • | 3 9 |
| 10 | Adjectives : Strong Inflet | ction | | • | • | • | • | • | 42 |
| 11 | Adjectives : Weak Inflect | tion | • | • | • | • | • | • | 46 |
| 12 | Pronominals : Strong and | Weak | • | • | • | • | • | • | 49 |
| 13 | Pronominals : Strong or | Weak | • | • | • | • | • | • | 53 |
| 14 | Adjective Inflection : Ex | ceptions | | • | • | • | • | • | 55 |
| 15 | Comparison. Substantiv | e Adject | tives | • | • | • | • | • | 56 |
| 16 | Numerals | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 60 |
| 17 | Verbs: Principal Parts | • | • | • | • | • | | | 61 |
| 18 | The Perfect and Pluperfe | ect Indi | cative | . Ir | regul | ar or | Mixe | d | |
| | Nouns | | • | • | • | • | • | | 64 |
| 19 | The Future Indicative. | Irregula | r We | ak Ve | rbs | | | | 67 |
| 20 | The Present Indicative of | i Certain | 1 Stro | ng Ve | rbs | | | • | 70 |
| 21 | The Imperative | • • | • | | • | • | • | • | 78 |
| 22 | The Modal Auxiliaries . | • | • | • | • | | | | 77 |
| 23 | Wiffen | • | | | • | | • | | 80 |
| 24 | Compound Verbs with In | separab | le Pre | fixes | | • | | | 82 |
| 25 | Compound Verbs with Se | parable | Prefi | xes | | | | | 84 |
| 26 | Compound Verbs with D | | | | | | | | 86 |
| 27 | The Passive Voice | • | | | | | | | 88 |
| 28 | Reflexive and Impersonal | Verbs | • | | | | | | 90 |
| 29 | The Subjunctive in Condi | | enten | ces | | | • | | 93 |
| 30 | The Subjunctive in Indire | | | | | • | | | 98 |
| | | | | | | | | | |

CONTENTS

ABSTRACT OF GRAMMAR

| INFLEC | TIONS . | | | | | | | | • | | | 107-158 |
|---------|--------------|----------|-------|---------|-------|----------|-------|-------|----|-------|---|-----------------|
| I | Verb Inflect | ions | | | | | | | | | | 107 |
| п | Odd or Unc | lassifie | ad In | ıflecti | ons | | | | | - | | 128 |
| m | Complete St | | | | | | | | | | Ĵ | 130 |
| IV | Defective S | | | | | • | • | • | • | • | • | 131 |
| v | Noun Inflec | | | Jouon | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 131 |
| • | | | - | • | • | <u>.</u> | • | • | • | • | • | |
| VI | Double Infle | ection | : 51 | rong | and | Weak | • | • | • | • | • | 139 |
| USES A | ND CONST | RUCI | ION | IS | | • | | | • | • | | 154 -189 |
|] | I Articles. | Noun | s of | Meas | ure. | Nam | es of | Citie | 6. | Cases | | 154 |
| п | [Pronouns | • | • | | • | • | • | • | • | • | | 157 |
| III | Comparati | ives ai | nd S | uperla | tive | | • | • | • | • | • | 163 |
| IV | Numerals | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 165 |
| V | Verbs | • | | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 165 |
| V | I Adverbs | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 175 |
| VI | I Prepositio | ns | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 180 |
| VIII | [Conjuncti | ons | • | | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 183 |
| IX | C Order of V | Words | • | • | | • | • | • | • | • | • | 184 |
| LIST OF | STRONG VEI | RBS A | CCOR | DING | то Ъ | OWE | ь Сн | ANGE | • | • | | 190 |
| ALPHABI | TICAL LIST | OF ST | RON | G ANI |) IRE | EGUL | AR V | ERBS | | • | | 193 |
| VOCABU | | • | | • | • | • | | | | • | | 199 |
| INDEX | • • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 213 |

.

BEGINNING GERMAN

PRONUNCIATION

| | | | | F | | |
|------------|---|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| Gern | | German name | Roman form | German form | German name | Roman form |
| A | a | ah | A a | N n | en | Nц |
| B | b | bay | ВЪ | Ðο | oh | 0 σ |
| T | C | tsay | Сс | ₽ p | pay | Рр |
| Ð | ð | day | Dd | Dq | koo | Qq |
| Ğ | e | ay | Еe | R r | er | R r |
| ঠ | f | eff | F f | Sís | 688 | Ss |
| G | g | gay | Gg | T t | tay | T t |
| Ş J | h | hah | Ηh | U u | 00 | Uu |
| I | i | ee | Ιi | Υb | fow | V v |
| I | İ | yot | Јj | W w | vay | W w |
| £ . | ŧ | kah | Kk | χŗ | ix | Хх |
| £ | l | el | \mathbf{L} 1 | Ŋŋ | ipsilon | Υу |
| M | m | em | Мm | B z | tset | Ζz |

The Alphabet

Of the two forms f and \mathfrak{s} , the latter is used at the end of a word, at the end of a syllable in compounds, and before suffixes (except suffixes of inflection); elsewhere f is used: Haus, Haus'thir, Haus'then, but Hau'fes; las, Les'=art, les'bar, but le'fen, lieft.

Note the following combinations: the *ch*, the *ck*, the *tz* and the set of the last, however, is as frequently represented by *ss* (and always sounded like *ss*). It is called *ess-tset'* and takes the place of $\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{s}$ at the end of a word or syllable, and of $\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{f}$ before

t or after a long vowel or diphthong: Fluß (short u), Fuß (long u), häß'lich, groß'artig, haßt, muß'te; Fü'ße (long ü), hei'= ßen. But Flüsse (short ü), has'se, müj'sen.

Capitals. Every noun, or word used as a noun, begins with a capital. Haus house, für meinen Bruder for my brother, in England in England. But adjectives derived from names of countries begin mostly with a small letter: english English.

Division into Syllables, at the end of a line, is indicated by a double hyphen, thus z.

A single consonant belongs to the following vowel: Ia-den, ge=he, Ga=li=lä'=a; likewise ch, ph, sch, st, s and th, which are regarded as representing simple sounds: Ia'=che, ra'=schen, bei'=sen, be'=ste. Other combinations are separated so that the last consonant belongs to the next line, c becoming tet: Rnap' pe, hat'=ten == hacten, Rat'=ze, hüp'=sen, Rarp'=sen, För'=ster, Stät'=te, forb'=re. Compounds are divided according to their component parts: Ang'=apsel hier'=cauf, voll=en'ben.

Vowels

A vowel doubled or followed by h is long: Haar, Mehi.

An accented vowel before a single consonant or at the end of a syllable is usually long: le'fen, Gebot', da, fo, du, dir, vor, nur. But in some of the commonest monosyllables, even when strongly accented, the vowel is short: ab, an, hin, mit, um, weg, bas, was.

A vowel before two or more consonants is usually short: Blatt, bumm, hilf. But in inflection a long stem-vowel remains long even before several consonants: fragst, Bluts (from fra'gen, Blut). A vowel before ch or β may be long, as in Buch, Ma β , or short, as in Bach, la β .

A a has always the quality of a in *father*. Long: ba'ben, Mahl; short: matt, dann.

VOWELS

E e long sounds like a in *fate*: E'pos, Heer, geht; e short like e in *bet*: Bett, Sen'dung, Herr (like e in *herring*, not like e in *her*).

Unaccented e is slurred; thus, en in lei'ten sounds like en in frighten; el in e'del, like le in ladle; es in neu'es, like ous in joyous; e in tom'me, nearly like a in comma; Ge in Geset, nearly like ga in gazettes.

J i long sounds like *i* in machine: ihn, I'da; i short, like *i* in sit: mit, Rip'pe, Hirt (not like hurt).

Se ie is sounded like long i: Lie'der, Philosophie'; but in certain words accented on the syllable preceding ie, these two letters are sounded separately, much like *ia* in *gloria*: Glo'rie, Fami'lie, Li'nie.

 \mathfrak{O} o long sounds like *o* in *note*: fo, Moor; o short, like the *o* often heard in New England in *whole* or *only*, a sound lying between the *a* in *fall* and the *o* in *toll*: toll, Gott, Mot'te.

u 1 1 1 long sounds like *oo* in *fool*: Bu'de, Kuh; u short, like *u* in *pull*: bumm, But'ter.

 \mathfrak{Y} to occurs chiefly in foreign words and, if accented, sounds usually like ii, if unaccented like i.

MODIFIED VOWELS

The vowels a, o, u have a modified sound which is indicated by two dots and called *umlaut*: Üä, Öö, Üü. For Üu äu see p. 4.

Ä ä long sounds like a in dare: Üh're, träge; ä short, like e in let: Ü'ste, bän'de.

 $\ddot{\mathbb{O}}$ i long may be produced by rounding the lips to pronounce o in woe and then trying to sound an a like that of ape instead: $\ddot{\mathbb{O}}$ hr, böfe. Short ö has the same quality, but requires less rounding of the lips: öff ne, fönnt.

 $\mathbf{\ddot{u}}$ ii long may be produced by rounding the lips to pronounce oo in woo and then trying to sound an *e* like that of *be* instead: über, fühl. Short ü has the same quality, but requires less rounding of the lips: Hüt'te, fül'len.

DIPHTHONGS

Ai ai and Ei ei sound like *i* in *mine*: Laib, Sai'te; Leib, Sei'te.

Au au sounds like ou in thou: laut, tau'fen.

Eu en and **Äu än** sound like oy in boy : Leu'te, heu'te; läu'te, Häu'te.

Consonants

Consonants omitted here are sounded as in English.

B b, at the end of a word or syllable, also before inflectional suffixes beginning with a consonant, sounds like p: Grab, Grüb'= chen, habt; elsewhere like b: bra'te, Blei, blei'ben, Bahn.

C c, before a, o, u, au, ou or a consonant, sounds like k: Cato, Clau'dius; elsewhere like ts or z: Cä'far, Ce'ber.

Ch dh, after a, o, u or au, has a deep guttural sound which resembles a throat-clearing or hawking and may be produced by whispering *koo* or *kah*: Dach, Loch, Buch, auch, la'che. Elsewhere ch has a higher palatal sound, like that of *k* in *key* when whispered: Blech, ich, Dä'cher, Lö'cher, Bü'cher, Lei'che, euch, Sträu' cher, Ler'che.

But (h and \hat{s} or \hat{j} , when belonging to the same stem, sound like x: O(h) \hat{s} , O(h) \hat{j} (en. In foreign words (h) often sounds like k: Charat^{*}ter, or like sh: Charat^{*}be.

 \mathfrak{D} **b**, at the end of a word or syllable, also before inflectional suffixes beginning with a consonant, sounds like t: Hand, länd'lich, Lands'mann, bandit; elsewhere like d: ba, Hände. — Dt bt sounds like t: Stadt, Gefantd'ter.

G g, at the end of a word (for ng see below) or syllable, also before inflectional suffixes beginning with a consonant, sounds like dh; hence guttural in Tag, log, Lug, lagit, zag'haft, and palatal in weg, Kö'nig, feig, Berg, liegst, vorzüg'lich. In all other positions it is best to let the beginner sound g like g in go: ganz, Sau, Gott, geht, Gier, gut, Glas, Gras, Gna'be, La'ge, La'ge, zo'gen, Sie'ge, Ber'ge, Kö'nige; so also when doubled: Flag'ge.

But g in a medial position after a, o, u or au, as in La'ge, La'ge and go'gen above, or in tru'gen, Mu'gen etc., is usually a "continuant" (not a "stop") with voice quality, i. e. a sound lying between the g in go and the d_1 in la'de, accompanied with vibration of the vocal chords; and g medial after other letters, as in Sie'ge, Ber'ge and Rö'nige above, or in Be'gen, lü'gen, Bäl'ge, Sor'ge etc., sounds usually like y in ye.

 \mathfrak{H} h, at the beginning of a word, sounds like h in hat: hört, Haus, Hei'mat; also in compounds: gehört', Land'haus, woher'; and in the suffixes haft and heit: hab'haft, Frei'heit. Elsewhere h is silent and indicates that the preceding vowel is long: froh, Dhr, Ch're, fä'het, fe'he.

J j sounds like y in yea: je, Jahr.

L I sounds like l in long. It is never silent: half; Bolf.

Ng ng sounds like *ng* in *singer*, not like *ng* in *finger* : län'ger, Fin'ger, hung'rig, Hoff nung.

 \mathfrak{F} pf. In producing pf, especially at the beginning of a word, it is important not to let a vowel-sound come in between the sound of p and that of f, but to pass quickly from the former to the latter: \mathfrak{R} opf, op' fert, \mathfrak{F} fer' be.

On qu is pronounced like fw, with the w as after ich and z: Qual, quer.

 $\Re \mathbf{r}$ is pronounced more distinctly and with more of a trill than r in English: $\Re \mathbf{i}$ ter, rei'te, bit' terer.

S \mathfrak{f} \mathfrak{F} . At the beginning of a word before a vowel, or between two vowels, \mathfrak{f} sounds like z in zero: $\mathfrak{f}a'\mathfrak{g}e$, $\mathfrak{l}e'\mathfrak{f}e$. — When final or doubled, or when standing before a consonant not at the beginning of a word, \mathfrak{F} or \mathfrak{f} sounds like s in so: bas, $\mathfrak{f}a\mathfrak{f}'\mathfrak{f}en$, $\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{b}'\mathfrak{f}e$. — The combination \mathfrak{F} sounds like ss: $\mathfrak{l}a\mathfrak{F}$, $\mathfrak{F}\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{t}'\mathfrak{F}e$, $\mathfrak{Flu}\mathfrak{F}$. Sp ip and St it, at the beginning of a word, are sounded like shp and sht, with the sh pronounced lightly and quickly: ipre'chen, Span'nung, ste'hen, Staub; also in compounds: bespre'chen, beste'hen; elsewhere they sound like sp and st: Wes'pe, liest, Majestät'.

Sch sounds like sh: scha'be, schnell.

It sounds like t: Tag, tre'ten, Tor; except before i in many words of French or Latin origin, where it sounds like ts or z: Nation', Ha'tio.

Th th, which occurs almost exclusively in foreign words, sounds like t: Thea'ter, Hypothe'se, Wal'ther (also written Walter).

Iz i sounds like ts or z: Say, Hit'ze.

 \mathfrak{B} v sounds like $f: \mathfrak{B}a'$ ter, vier. But in foreign words (except when final) it sounds like $v: \mathfrak{B}a'$ je, \mathfrak{B}iji' te, bra' ve, relati' ve (but like f in brav, relativ').

 \mathfrak{W} w sounds like $v: \mathfrak{wel}'\mathfrak{he}$, $\mathfrak{L}\mathfrak{v}'\mathfrak{we}$. But in producing w after $\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{h}$ or \mathfrak{z} , belonging to the same syllable, both lips are used, as in the act of blowing (instead of the lower lip and the upper teeth, as in producing v): Schwe' $\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{ter}$, $\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{w}\mathfrak{v}'\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{ten}$, Bwang, $\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{wei}$.

X z sounds like x: Art, He're, Zer'res.

3 z sounds like ts in colts: Holz, za'gen, zwi'schen.

Accent in German words, as in English, rests mostly on the root or stem, and in compounds mostly on the first member: war'tete, Freun'binnen, Aug'apfel. The beginner should be careful never to accent the prefixes Be be, Emp emp, Ent ent, Er er, Ge ge, Ber ver, Ber zer.

German Punctuation differs from English chiefly in the use of commas before subordinate clauses. A comma is therefore found before all such words as weil because, wenn if, ber who, bag that, welcher which.

PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION

Vowels and Diphthongs. 1. Long a: fam, Aal, lahm, fahl, jaß, Saat, Tat.

2. Short a: Ramm, all, Lamm, Fall, naß, was, fatt, wart'.

3. Long e : Heer, Beet, Speer, mehr, fehrt, weh.

4. Short e and short ä: Herr, Bett, sperr', rennt, benn, wenn, fällt, hält, hätt'.

5. Unaccented e: Aa'le, lah'me, Kam'me, Hee're, kehr'te, we'he, Her'ren, Bet'ten, war'te, fäll'te, hät'te, fat'ten, gefällt', Gehäl'ter, behal'ten, naf'fe, Wel'len, schel'ten, wen'de, Wän'de.

6. Long i, and ie : mir, ihre, Bie'gel, verlie'ren, dien'te, wie'fen.

7. Short i: ift, Blid, nicht, ir're, Din'te, Birt, gewiß', in, wij' fen.

8. Long o: Moos, Go'te, Ohr, Soh'le, Schoß, Bo'den, to'bet, lo'je.

9. Short o: Got'te, konn'te, sol'le, Rock, Sor'ge, gestor'ben, gewor'den, Mord, voll.

10. Long u: gut, Bu'be, tun, Ru'he, nur, Uhr, Natur'.

11. Short u: muß, Mut'ter, wuß'te, frumm, un'ter, Durft.

12. Long ä: mäht, Üh're, wä're, tä'te, Rrä'mer.

13. Long ö: bös, bö'je, Rö'nig, höh'nen, hör'te, grö'ger.

14. Short ö: fönnt, Töch'ter, Söl'ler, gehörnt', fchöp'fen, Göt'ter.

15. Long ü: für, füh'len, dü'ster, Brü'der, ü'bel, Hü'ter.

16. Short ü: müßt, Müt'ter, fül'len, flü'sterte, gelüf'tet.

17. Ni ai and Gi ei: Bai, bei, Laib, Leib, Hai, Hei'be.

18. An au: lau, Laub, aus, Haus, schlau'er, geschaut', Stau'be.

19. Eu en and An än : eu're, Säu're, Seu'che, Bäu'che, heu'te, Häu'te, Freund, scheußlich, häus'lich.

Consonants. 1. 3 b: ab, gebe, Bin'be, Eb'be, gehabt', hubich.

2. Ch ch: ach, Fä'cher, auch, Bü'cher, lach'te, doch, ich, nicht, nichts, fuch', fu'chen, schlecht, euch, heu'cheln, däuch'te, Fuchs, Wachs wö'chentlich, höch'ste (long ö). hoch (long o).

3. D b: Land, fin'den, Leid, lei'der, Städt'chen (long ä), red'lich, bau'erten, Mäd'chen.

4. G g: Glas, ging, gin'gen, gegan'gen, lag, la'gen, bie'ge, bog, we'nig, zö'ge, fliegst, sagt, genug', schlägt, We'ge sau'ge, Berg, Ber'ge, ru'hig, Hoff'nung, betrüg'lich, log, lo'gen, Sin'ger, Fin'ger, Sän'ger, Au'ge, tau'gen.

5. Bf pf: Bfad, Bflicht, gepflegt', Ap'fel, Bfer'de, Hop'fen.

6. Ou qu : quer, quillt, Qual, Quit'te, gequol'len.

7. R r: ra'te, rö'ter, Rand, er, Schrau' be, gra'be, Hirt, Schmerz, Ir'renhaus, knar'ren, Dür're, her, Herr, bit'terster.

8. S í s íí f: Soh'le, gesagt', versu'chen, als, daß, Was'ser, gese'hen, muß, wüß'te, das, Fuß (long 1).

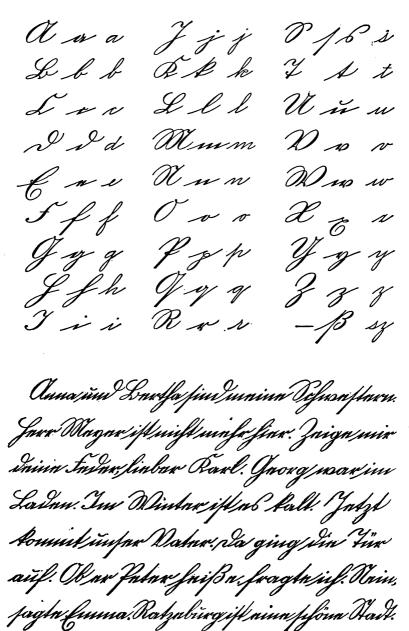
9. St ft Sp sp: ra'ste, verlost (long o), stand, gestand', stim's me, gestimmt', Steu'er, sprach, ab'sprechen, Mei'ster, Spieß, verstieß', Pfer'destall.

10. Th th: Thea'ter, Theorie', Antipathie'.

11. B v: Va'ter, vier, verspre'chen, viel, vor, Vo'gel, von, bevor', davon', Groß'vater, voll, versührt'.

12. 29 w: wann, wie, wo, worü'ber, wovon', verwöhnt', gewann', Win'ter, Wan'derer, gewußt', zwei, schwer, zwingen, Zwerg.

13. 3 z t: zie'hen, zog, gezo'gen, set'zen, seg'te, geset, rei'zend, rib'te, Schwanz, Zim'mer, zu, Zug, Zeit, Zwerg, bezahlt', Erzäh'lung, Zü'gel, herz'lich, Say, Sit'ze, zum, wozu', zuvor'.



alla Manpfan fim Dormar. If North mill Jaima Orfun How? Jinga min Jub Jans, Fritz! Tu ying in The and. In Minter if a Sall. Main, Sout ful fin nicht ynfagt. Yn gel ift no ninn Hard, ubar Sumalo man no woof sin Alinob Norf. Mandror Macfilint Ulbur allan Gigfaln If Ruf, In allow Digfalu Remonth Du Ramm ninn fang; Sin Dögnlnin fofugnignn im Malin. Marta min, balin Rufaft In and. Yortfn!

Lesson I

PRESENT AND PAST INDICATIVE OF WEAK VERBS

Ι

Weak Verbs. In German, as in English, there are weak and strong verbs. How they differ from each other will be explained later. This lesson treats of weak verbs only, and first of the inflection of fagen to say and warten to wait in the

PRESENT INDICATIVE

| ich sage I say | ich warte I wait |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| du sagft thou sayest, you say | du wart eft thou waitest, you wait |
| er, sie, es sagt he, she, it says | er, sie, es wartet he, she, it waits |
| wir sag en we say | wir warten <i>we wait</i> |
| ihr sagt ye, you say | ihr wart et ye, you wait |
| sie sag en they say | sie warten they wait |
| Sie sagen you say | Sie warten <i>you wait</i> |

The letters in **bold-faced** type are the endings; fag and wart are the stems. Observe that wart has eft and et (2d and 3d sing.; and 2d plur.) where fag has only ft and t. The longer endings are added to stems in t, b and a few other letters, for the sake of more distinct pronunciation.

1

1

1

The personal pronouns **bu**, if and **Sit** are all commonly translated by *you*. Dut and its plural if are used to address intimate friends, near relatives and young children. Sit, always with a capital and with the verb in the third person plural, is used in addressing any other person or persons.

| Inflect like ich fage: | Inflect like ich warte : |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| ich frage I ask, inquire | ich ant'worte I answer |
| ich höre I hear | ich ar'beite I work |
| ich suche I seek, search, look for | |

VOCABULARY

| aber but | nicht not |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| und and | nichts nothing, not anything |
| auch also, too | etwas something, anything |
| ja yes | was what |
| nein no | Herr Schmidt Mr. Smith |
| heute to-day | Rarl Charles |

1. Ich frage Rarl, was er sucht 1, aber er antwortet nicht 2. 2. Ich höre etwas; hörft du² auch etwas, Rarl? Nein, ich höre nichts, Herr Schmidt. 3. Warten Sie auch, Herr Schmidt? Ja, ich warte. 4. Suchen Sie etwas, Herr Schmidt? Nein, ich suche nichts, Karl. 5. Sie arbeitet heute, und ich arbeite auch. 6. Sucht ihr etwas? Ja, wir suchen etwas, aber wir sagen⁸ nicht, was wir suchen. 7. Was sagt Rarl?-Er sagt Nein.-Und was sagen sie?-Sie antworten nicht.

¹ Is looking for. German has no special verb-phrases to express progressive action. —² Literally, he answers not, i. e. he does not answer, and, in sentence 2, hear you? i. e. do you hear? There is nothing in German to correspond to do, does, did etc. in negations or questions. - ⁸ fagen often means tell.

1. Charles is waiting and I am waiting too. 2. What do you say, Mr. Smith? I don't say anything (say nothing). 3. What are they looking for to-day? They don't tell what they are looking for. 4. Are you asking Charles? Yes, but he does not answer. 5. She says she does not hear anything (hears nothing), but I hear something. 6. Are you working to-day, Charles? No, I am not working. 1/ 111

II

Next we take up the inflection of fagen and warten in the

PAST INDICATIVE

| ich sagte I said | ich wartete I waited |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| du sagteft etc. | du wartetest etc. |
| er, sie, es sagte | er, sie, es wartete |
| wir sag ten | wir wart eten |
| ihr sagtet | ihr wart etet |
| sie, Sie sagten | sie, Sie warteten |

12

Without the longer endings etc (instead of te), etcft (instead of teft) etc., it would be impossible to distinguish, in pronunciation at least, several forms of the past indic. of warten from the corresponding forms of its present indic., e.g. wartte would sound like warte etc.

| Inflect like ich fagte: | Inflect like ich wartete: |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| ich frag te I asked, inquired | ich ant'wortete I answered |
| ich hörte I heard | ich ar'beit ete I worked |
| ich suchte I sought, searched, | looked for |

VOCABULARY

| als when | jehr <i>very</i> |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| gestern <i>yesterday</i> | 10 <i>80</i> |
| hier here | wie how |
| jetzt now | wo where |
| lange, adv., long, a long time | bis sechs Uhr till six o'clock |
| noch still, yet | Frau Schmidt Mrs. Smith |
| nicht mehr no more, no longer | Marie' Mary |

1. Ich fragte Karl, was er suchte, aber er antwortete nicht. 2. Warteten Sie lange gestern, Herr Schmidt? Ia, ich wartete schr lange, bis sechs Uhr. 3. Ich hörte etwas; hörtest du auch etwas, Karl? Nein, ich hörte nichts, Herr Schmidt. 4. Wir arbeiteten gestern sehr lange. — Wie lange arbeitetet ihr? — Bis sechs Uhr, aber wir arbeiten heute nicht so lange. 5. Wo suchtet ihr Karl? Wir suchten Karl hier. 6. Was sagte sie sie fragten? Sie antwortete: "Nein, ich such sich schwidt." 7. Urbeiteten Frau Schmidt und Marie noch? Frau Schmidt arbeitete noch, aber Marie arbeitete nicht mehr. 8. Anna fragt Karl, was er sucht. — Und was sagt er? — Er sagt, er sucht jest nichts.

1. What did she ask Charles? — She asked Charles what he was looking for. — And what did he say? — He did not answer. 2. Did you wait till six o'clock, Mrs. Smith? No, Charles, I did not wait so long. 3. What do I hear, Mary? you are not working? 4. How long did you work, Charles? I worked till six o'clock. 5. I am looking for Smith here. 6. She did not hear what they said. 7. Does Charles Smith work here? No, he works here no longer.

Lesson 2

PRESENT AND PAST INDICATIVE OF STRONG VERBS

I

Strong Verbs. Regular strong verbs — the only ones that concern us here — do not differ from the weak in the inflection of the present. — The following are the inflections of formmen to come and finden to find in the

PRESENT INDICATIVE

| ich komme I come | ich finde I find | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|--|--|--|
| bu fommft etc. | du findest etc. | | | |
| er, sie, es kommt | er sie, es findet | | | |
| wir kommen | wir finden | | | |
| ihr kommt | ihr findet | | | |
| sie, Sie kommen | sie, Sie finden | | | |
| lect like ich fomme: | Inflect like ich finde: | | | |

| Inflect like ich fomme: | Inflect like ich finde: |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| ich bleibe I stay, remain | ich bitte I beg, ask |
| ich gehe I go, walk | ich reite I ride |
| ich liege I lie, am reclining | ich site 1 I sit |

¹ The inflection of fitte is not quite like that of finite. The 3. sing. and 2. plur. are usually fitt, instead of fittet, for a t is easily sounded after a sibilant (t). The 2. sing. (full form fitteft) is often pronounced and written like the 3. sing., i.e. fitt.

VOCABULARY

| frant ill, sick | oft often |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| daß, conjunction, that | wer who |
| - denn, conjunction, for | zu Hause at home |
| ober or | nach Hause home |
| da there | zu Fuß on foot |
| immer always | zu Pferde on horseback |

1. Ich gehe jest nach Haufe, aber Karl bleibt hier. 2. Ich finde Marie nicht¹, wo sitt sie? Sie sitt da. 3. Wer kommt da zu Pferde, Karl oder Herr Schmidt? Karl, denn Herr Schmidt reitet² nicht. 4. Kommen sie oft zu Pferde? Ia, sie reiten jest immer, fie gehen nicht mehr zu Fuß. 5. Sie bittet Karl immer, daß er arbeitet³, aber er hört⁴ nicht. 6. Frau Schmidt kommt heute nicht, denn sie liegt noch krank zu Hause. 7. Reiten Sie jetzt auch, Herr Schmidt? Ia, aber ich reite nicht¹ sehr oft. 8. Es liegt nicht mehr da, wo Sie suchten, es liegt jetzt hier. 9. Bitte⁵, wie lange bleibst⁶ du heute, Marie? Ich bleide⁶ bis sechs Uhr, Karl, bis Herr und Frau Schmidt kommen.

¹ Night, if modifying a sentence as a whole, usually stands last; if modifying some particular word or phrase, as in 7, it stands before that word or phrase. — ² reiten means only *riding* on the back of a horse or other animal, not *riding* in a carriage or on a wheel. — ⁸ Literally begs C. always that he works, i.e. always begs C. to work. — ⁴ Here, as often, hören means listen, obey. — ⁵ Bitte, without pronoun, often means pray or please. — ⁶ Here, as often, the present partakes of the meaning of the future; say, are you going to stay... I am going to stay or I shall stay.

1. Are they coming on foot or on horseback? Charles comes on foot, but Mr. Smith on horseback. 2. I am staying here till Mary comes. — But Mary is lying ill at home, she is not coming. 3. Please, Mary, where does Charles sit? He always sits¹ there, but he is not coming to-day (comes to-day not). 4. We are going home now (now home²). 5. Who is going to stay at home to-day (to-day at home²)? Mr. and Mrs. Smith are going to stay. 6. She says he rides often, but Mary always walks.

¹ An adverb is not allowed to stand between subject and verb, hence the German order is, 'he sits always there'. — ² An adverb of time usually precedes an adverb of place.

п

In the past tense, strong verbs always have a different stemvowel from that of the present, whereas weak verbs have the same vowel in both tenses. This, then, is one difference between weak and strong verbs. Another, as seen below, is in the inflection of the

PAST INDICATIVE

| ich kam I came | ich fand I found |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| du famft etc. | du fandest etc. |
| er, sie, es kam | er, sie, es fand |
| wir famen | wir fand en |
| ihr kamt | ihr fand et |
| sie, Sie kamen | sie, Sie fand en |
| Inflect like ich fam: | Inflect like ich fand: |
| ich blieb I stayed, remained | ich bat ¹ I begged, asked |
| ich ging ¹ I went, walked | ich ritt ¹ I rode |
| ich lag I lay, was reclining | ich jag ¹ I sat |

¹ In some strong verbs the past differs from the present, not only in the stem-vowel, but also as to consonants.

VOCABULARY

| mie <i>never</i> | warum? why? |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| noch nicht not yet | von Zeit zu Zeit from time to time |
| schon already, by this time | um fünf Uhr at five o'clock |
| 10 wie so as, as as | Sonntag Sunday |
| wann? when? at what time? | Montag Monday |

1. Ich ging gestern nach Hause, aber Karl blieb da bis Montag. 2. Ich fand Marie nicht, wo saß sie, bitte? Sie saß hier, wo ich site. 3. Wer kam zu Fuß, und wer (kam)¹ zu Pferde? Marie kam zu Fuß, und Herr Schmidt und Karl kamen zu Pferde. 4. Warum kam Marie nicht auch zu Pferde? oder reitet sie nie? Ia, sie reitet von Zeit zu Zeit, aber nicht so oft, wie Herr Schmidt oder Karl. 5. Wie lange lagen Sie krant? Ich lag dis Sonntag, aber ich blieb zu Hause dis Montag. 6. Wir ritten um sechs Uhr nach Hause, aber ihr rittet schon um füns (Uhr).¹ 7. Baten² Sie Frau Schmidt auch? Ia, aber sie kommt noch nicht, sie kommt um sechs (Uhr).¹ 8. Und wann kommt Karl? Karl sitzt da schon. 9. Sie sagten nicht, wann sie kamen oder wie lange sie blieben. 10. Ich arbeite schon, aber du (arbeitest)¹ noch nicht.

¹ May be omitted.—² Here did you ask or invite...

1. They came from time to time, but they never¹ stayed

ş

so long as you. 2. Why did you not² ask Charles? I hear he is lying ill at home. 3. I was sitting there where you sit, but they were sitting here. 4. They rode home and I stayed till Sunday. 5. At what time did you find Mrs. Smith? At five or six o'clock. 6. I always¹ go on foot. 7. Why aren't you at work yet (why work you yet not)? 8. It lay there no longer.

¹ See note at the end of I above.— ² See note ¹ on the second Ger. sentence of I above.

Lesson 3

PRESENT AND PAST INDICATIVE OF Saben, Sein, Berben ORDER OF WORDS

I

3th habe, ith bin, ith werde. The verbs haben to have, fein to be and werden to become are more or less irregular in their inflection. We take up first the

PRESENT INDICATIVE

| I have | I am | I become |
|------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| ich habe | ich bin | ich werd e |
| du haft | du bift | du wirft |
| er, sie, es hat | er, sie, es ist | er, sie, es wird |
| wir haben | wir sind | wir werd en |
| ihr habt | ihr seid | ihr werd et |
| sie, Sie hab en | sie, Sie sind | sie, Sie werd en |

The forms of werden are often rendered by those of to get or to grow, e. g. es wird falt it gets or is getting cold, wir werben reich we are growing rich.

VOCABULARY

| ich gab (like fam) I gave | reich <i>rich</i> |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| arm poor | alles all, everything |
| gut good | genug enough |
| kalt cold | -viel much a great deal |

.

...

| Take the sentences below | in the following order: 1-1 [*] , |
|----------------------------------|--|
| $2-2^{a}$, etc. Observe the pos | ition of subject and verb. |
| 1. Jch bin jetzt frank. | 1ª Jest bin ich frank. |
| 2. Er ift nicht mehr hier. | 2ª Hier ift er nicht mehr. |
| 3. Sie gab Karl alles, als | 3ª Als sie kam, gab sie |
| sie kam. | Rarl alles. |
| 4. 3ch habe nicht viel. | 4ª. Biel habe ich nicht. |
| 5. Wir find nicht arm. | 5ª Arm find wir nicht. |

The reason for the order on the right — verb: subject — which is called the Inverted Order, in distinction from the Normal Order on the left — subject: verb — is this: in independent declarative sentences beginning with any other element than the subject, the verb must precede the subject.

But in sentences beginning with the conjunctions aber but, benn for, ober or, und and, and a few others, we have the Normal Order, as on the left below, unless such conjunction is immediately followed by another element requiring the In. verted Order, as on the right below:

- 6. Wir haben genug, aber wir 6ª Wir haben genug, aber reich find nicht reich. find wir nicht.
- 7. Jch bleibe zu Hause, denn es 7ª Jch bleibe zu Hause, denn wird jest schon kalt. jest wird es schon kalt.
- 8. Sie ist sehr reich, und fie ist 8ª. Sie ist sehr reich, und gut auch gut. ist sie auch.

1. Now we are no longer poor. 2. We have not much, but we have enough. 3. They gave Charles something when they came. 4. When they came, they gave Charles nothing. 5. There it lies. 6. Yesterday I stayed at home till five o'clock, and you did not come. 7. I am going home, for now I have enough. 8. Who says they are getting rich?

Π

Next we take up the inflection of haben, sein and werden in the

18

PAST INDICATIVE

| I had . | I was | I became |
|---------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| ich hatte | ich war | ich wurde |
| du hatteft | du warft | du wurdeft |
| er, sie, es hat te | er, sie, es war | er, sie, es wurde |
| wir hat ten | wir war en | wir wurd en |
| ihr hat tet | ihr wart or waret | ihr wurd et |
| fie, Sie hat ten | sie, Sie waren | sie, Sie wurd en |

VOCABULARY

| ich nahm (like kam) I took | wenig <i>little</i> |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| ich spiele (like sage) I play | nur only, but |
| ich spielte (like sagte) I played | ob whether, if |
| gut, adv., well | 🗢 weil because |

In the sentences below observe the position of the verbs in bold-faced type.

1. Sie gaben nicht viel, benn sie hatten nur sehr wenig. 2. Sie gaben nicht viel, weil sie nur sehr wenig hatten. 3. Ich frage jest nur, ob du gestern da warst. 4. Wir hörten, daß Karl und Marie noch spielten, als es schon kalt wurde. 5. Von Zeit zu Zeit fragt sie, wer da so gut spielt. 6. Sagtest du nicht, daß er alles uahm? Nein, ich sagte nur, er nahm sehr viel. 7. Schmidt war nie reich, aber er hatte immer genug. 8. Jest wird er arm, weil er nicht mehr arbeitet. 9. Heute fand ich, was ich gestern suchte.

The reason for the position of the verbs in bold-faced type is this: in dependent clauses introduced by a relative or interrogative, like was, wo, wer etc., or by a subordinating conjunction, like weil, ob, baß, als etc., the verb must be transposed to the end. This is called the Transposed Order.

Observe: (1) benn *for*, in sentence 1, requires the normal order, whereas weil *because*, in sentence 2, requires the transposed order; (2) when $ba\beta$ is omitted, as in the last clause of sentence 6 (and as *that* often is omitted in English), we have the normal order, er nahm fehr viel, instead of $ba\beta$ er fehr viel nahm.

1. I ask if you had enough. And I answer that we had not enough. 2. Mrs. Smith says that Mary plays very well. 3. They came home because it was so cold. 4. Did you find what you were looking for yesterday, Mr. Smith? Yes, Charles, I found everything. 5. I did not ask Smith how he became so very poor; but Mary says he was ill a long time (long ill). 6. You were sitting where I am sitting now. 7. She had but little, for they took everything.

Lesson 4



THE DEFINITE ARTICLE. NOUNS: CLASS I

I

We now leave the inflection of verbs for a while and turn to that of the articles, nouns, pronouns and adjectives.

Gender. Case. There are three genders, the masculine, feminine and neuter, and four cases, namely, the nominative, or the case of the subject and of address (vocative); the genitive, corresponding to the English possessive or the objective with of; the dative, or the case of the indirect object and corresponding to the English objective with to or for; and the accusative, or the case of the direct object.— The genitive, dative and accusative are called Oblique Cases.

The Definite Article is inflected as follows:

| SINGULAR | | | R | | PLURAL | |
|----------|------------------|-----|-----|--------|--------------|--------|
| | masc. fem. neut. | | | | masc. fem. n | eut. |
| N. | der | die | dað | the | die | the |
| G. | des | der | deð | of the | der | of the |
| D. | dem | der | dem | to the | den | to the |
| А. | den | die | dað | the | die | the |

VOCABULARY

The nouns below are in the nominative singular and, in the first part (I) of this lesson, are used in that case only.

NOUNS

| der Wagen wagon, carriage | groß great, tall, large |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| das ¹ Mädchen the girl | flein small, little |
| der Garten the garden | schön beautiful, handsome, fine |
| der Bater the father | warm warm |
| die Mutter the mother | bald soon |

¹ The grammatical gender of German nouns often differs from the natural gender, or sex, of the objects denoted by the nouns.

1. Als wir kamen, war es noch falt, aber es wurde bald warm. 2. Er sagt, daß der Wagen nicht sehr groß ist. 3. Bater und Mutter kamen um fünf Uhr und blieben bis sechs. 4. Wir fragen, ob das Mädchen auch da war. 5. Der Garten ist klein, aber schön. 6. Wer spielte da so schön¹? Es war Marie. Sie ist noch sehr klein, aber sie spielt schon sehr gut. 7. Karl wird jest groß, er ist bald so groß wie Vater. 8. Warum ging das Mädchen nicht nach Hause? Sie² ging³ nach Hause. 9. Der Bater gab nur wenig, die Mutter nichts.

¹ Beautifully. Almost any German adjective, in its stem-form, can be used adverbially. $-^{2}$ The rule is that a pronoun agrees in grammatical gender with the noun for which it stands, but with nouns denoting persons the natural gender prevails. $-^{3}$ ging (pronounce with emphasis) = did go.

1. Father stayed till Sunday, Charles till Monday, and Mother is still here. 2. Was the girl as handsome as they said? Yes, she was very handsome. 3. We found that the carriage was not large enough. 4. It soon grew so warm that Charles and I went home. 5. I am asking now whether the garden was large or small. 6. They had but little, but they always had enough. 7. Mary plays very beautifully.

Π

Nouns are divided into four classes, according to the form of the nominative plural, as compared with the nominative singular.

The following rules apply to all the four Classes:

1. Feminine nouns have the oblique cases (p. 20) of the singular like the nominative singular.

2. All nouns have the oblique cases of the plural like the nominative plural, except that the dative adds \mathbf{n} if the nominative does not end in \mathbf{n} .

Class I has the nominative plural like the nominative singular, except that some nouns modify the stem-vowel — a, v, u of the singular becoming $\ddot{a}, \ddot{v}, \ddot{u}$ in the plural.

Masculines and neuters add \$ for the genitive singular and have the dative and accusative like the nominative.

In Class I belong: 1. All nouns with the suffixes then and lein — these are neuter diminutives.

2. All masculines and neuters with the suffixes el, en, er.

3. Only two feminines: die Mutter mother, die Tochter daughter.

Models. With vowel unchanged in the plural:

| wagon, carriage | | | | gırl |
|-----------------|-----|--------|-----|----------|
| N. | der | Wagen | das | Mädchen |
| G. | des | Wagens | des | Mädchens |
| D. | dem | Wagen | dem | Mädchen |
| А. | den | Wagen | das | Mädchen |
| N. | die | Wagen | die | Mädchen |
| G. | der | Wagen | der | Mädchen |
| D. | den | Wagen | den | Mädchen |
| A. | die | Wagen | die | Mädchen |

With vowel modified in the plural:

| | garden | | father | | mother | |
|----|--------|------------------|--------|----------------|--------|---------|
| N. | der | Garten | der | Bater | die | Mutter |
| G. | des | (Sarten s | des | Baters | der | Mutter |
| D. | dem | Garten | dem | Bater | der | Mutter |
| А. | den | Garten | den | Bater | die | Mutter |
| N. | die | Särten | die | Bäter | die | Mütter |
| G. | der | Gärten | der | Bäter | der | Mütter |
| D. | den | Gärten | den | Bäter n | den | Müttern |
| A. | die | Gärten | die | Bäter | die | Mütter |

NOUNS

٠

VOCABULARY

In the vocabularies, the nominative singular and the nominative plural of each noun are given with the definite article. It is important to learn these two forms as they furnish the clue to the rest.

| der Bruder | die Brüder brother |
|--|---|
| der Apfel | die Üpfel apple |
| der Vogel | die Bögel bird |
| die Tochter | die Töchter daughter |
| das Fräulein | die Fräulein young lady, Miss |
| ich finge (like fomme) I sing in, with dat., in | ich fang (like fam) I sang in, with acc., into |

1. Wir gingen in den Garten, wo die Bögel sangen. 2. In dem Wagen saken Bater und Mutter, Rarl aber 1 ritt zu Pferde. 3. Den Töchtern gab Frau Schmidt Üpfel. 4. Wer ist das Mädchen da im (= in dem) Garten ? und was sucht sie ? Es ist Fräulein Marie, sie sucht noch Upfel. 5. Die Bögel singen nicht mehr, denn es wird schon kalt. 6. 3ch frage, ob herr Schmidt der Bruder oder der Bater des Fräuleins ift. Er ift des Fräuleins Bruder. 7. Wie fanden Sie die Töchter? schön? Ja, aber nicht so schön wie die Mutter.

¹ When not standing first in the sentence or clause, aber usually means however.

1. The brother's daughter was not so tall and handsome as Miss Mary. 2. We found the apples still in the garden. 3. From time to time we took Father's carriage. 4. The girl gave the apple to the brother. 5. When we went into the garden, the birds were singing no longer. 6. Who sat in the carriage? The mother of the young lady. 7. I did not ask (beg) Miss Smith, because she does not sing. 8. Does Mary play as well as Charles? No, not yet.

Lesson 5

WORDS LIKE ber. NOUNS : CLASS II

Ι

Words like ber. The following words — used as adjectives and as pronouns — are inflected like ber, except that they have e where ber has ie, and es where ber has as:

| dief er this, this one | manch er many a (one), many |
|--|------------------------------------|
| iener that, that one | folch er such, such a one |
| -jeder every, every one, each, each one | welcher which, which one, who |

SINGULAR

PLURAL

| | m. | f. | n. | | m.f.n. | |
|----|----------------|--------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------|
| N. | dies er | diese | die fes | th is | diese | these |
| G. | dies es | dieser | dieses | of th is | dieser | of these |
| D. | dies em | dieser | diesem | to th is | dies en | to these |
| A. | dies en | diese | die fes | this | diese | these |

VOCABULARY

| der Onkel | die Onkel <i>uncle</i> |
|-------------|------------------------|
| das Fenster | die Fenster window |
| das Zimmer | die Zimmer room |

mir, dat. of ich, to me, me

| ich | jah (like kam) I saw | zwei | two | | |
|-------|------------------------------|------|------|-------|--------------|
| 🔷 ich | zeige (like sage) I show | aus, | with | dat., | out of, from |
| ich | zeigte (like fagte) I showed | mit, | with | dat., | with - |

1. Er zeigte mir die zwei Zimmer, und ich nahm dieses, weil jenes fo klein ist und auch nur zwei Fenster hat. 2. Sie finden solche Üpfel nicht in jedem Garten, Frau Schmidt. — Aus welchem (Gar= ten) kommen sie?— Aus Onkels Garten; sie sind nur klein, aber sehr schön. 3. Manche Vögel singen nicht. 4. Zeigen Sie¹ mir das Fräulein heute, mit welcher Sie gestern sangen oder spiel= ten?— Ja. Sie ist noch nicht hier. Aber sie kommt bald. Ah, da ist sie schon. Ist sie nicht schön?— Sehr schön. Und reich ist

NOUNS

fie auch, sagen Sie?—Sie nicht, aber ber Vater ist sehr reich. 5. Wann und wie oft reiten Sie? Ich reite jeden Sonntag.² 6. Ich sah Frau Schmidt manchen Sonntag² mit der Tochter, als ich noch zu Hause war.—Und den Onkel, Frau Schmidts⁸ Bruder, sahen Sie nie?—Nein, nie. 7. Was sucht Karl im Garten? Er sucht den Vogel, welcher da singt.

¹ In the sense of the future (L. 2, i. n. ⁶): Are you going to show etc. — ² The accusative is often used adverbially to denote time. — ⁸ Proper names not ending in an s-sound have \$ in the genitive (without an apostrophe).

1. Are you going to show me the apples which you found in the garden? Yes, Charles, but they are not very good. 2. This room has only two windows. 3. We often saw such birds in Uncle's garden. 4. That carriage is not so large as this. 5. Mrs. Smith is asking whether you are the brother with whom Miss Mary came. 6. We found that each room had two windows. 7. They took many an apple out of Father's garden.

Π

Nouns. Class II forms the nominative plural by adding e to the nominative singular and usually modifies the stem-vowel — a, v, u, au of the singular becoming $\ddot{a}, \ddot{v}, \ddot{u}, \ddot{a}u$ in the plural.

Masculines and neuters of one syllable usually add e3 for the genitive singular and e or nothing for the dative; those of more than one syllable usually add only 3 for the genitive and nothing for the dative; but after an s-sound the genitive always needs e3. The accusative is like the nominative.

For the oblique cases of the plural, and for feminines, see L. 4. 11.

In Class II belong: 1. All nouns with the suffixes ich, ig, ing or ling — these are masculines without vowel-change in the plural.

2. The majority of monosyllabic nouns in the language these are mostly masculines with vowel-change in the plural; only thirty are feminines, also with vowel-change; and forty

5.

are neuters, without vowel-change. — Among the masculines of this group are nearly all the monosyllabic nouns ending in g, II, m, mm, \$f, Id, \$ and \$.

Models. With vowel modified in the plural:

| | | son | f | bot | \ h | and |
|----|-----|----------------|-----|-------|-----|----------------|
| N. | der | Sohn | der | Fuß | die | Hand |
| G. | des | Sohn es | des | Fußes | der | Hand |
| D. | dem | Sohn e | dem | Fuße | der | Hand |
| A. | den | Sohn | den | Fuß | die | Hand |
| N. | die | Söhn e | die | Füße | die | Händ e |
| G. | der | Söhn e | der | Füße | der | Händ e |
| D. | den | Söhn en | den | Füßen | den | Händ en |
| А. | die | Söhne | die | Füße | die | Händ e |

With vowel unchanged in the plural:

| | | lay | k | ing | × 1 | yea r |
|------|-----|---------------|-----|-----------------|-----|--------------|
| N. ` | der | Tag | der | Aönig | das | Jahr |
| G. | des | Tag es | des | <u> Rönig</u> S | des | Jahres |
| D. | dem | Tage | dem | König | dem | Jahre |
| А. | den | Tag | den | König | das | Jahr |
| N. | die | Tag e | die | König e | die | Jahre |
| G. | der | Tag e | der | Rönig e | der | Jahre |
| D. | den | Tagen | den | König en | den | Jahren |
| A. | die | Tage | die | <u> Rönig</u> e | die | Jahre |

VOCABULARY

ber Baum bie Bäume tree bie Biume tree bie Pferde horse ich wohne (like fage) I dwell, reside, live ich wohnte (like fagte) I dwelt, resided, lived ich fuhr (like fam) I rode, drove (in a carriage) bei, with dat., at, at the house of, with nach, with dat., to, towards, after von, with dat., to

1. Der König fuhr in dem Wagen mit den sechs Pferden 2. Nach zwei Tagen hörte ich, daß du krank zu Hause lagst. 3. Als ich Karl sah, kam er von Onkel und ging zu Mutter. — Bon welchem Onkel? — Bon Onkel Schmidt. 4. Wie lange wohnte sie bei jener Tochter? Da wohnte sie manches Jahr. 5. Bitte, von welchem Baume sind diese Äpfel hier? — Bon jenem, welchen Sie in Vaters Garten sahen. Warum fragen Sie? Sind sie nicht gut? — O ja, sie sind sehr gut, wir haben auch solche. 6. Söhne hat er nicht, aber er hat zwei Töchter. 7. Er ritt jeden Tag zum (= zu dem) König. 8. Ich habe zwei hände und zwei Füße. 9. Wo wohnen Sie jest? Ich wohne jest bei Frau Schmidts Bruder. 10. Als er nach hause ging, sagte er zu mir: "Ich fomme bald."

1. From which son was he coming? He has two sons. — He was coming from Charles. 2. Every day she went into Father's garden and looked for apples. 3. Please, where does Mrs. Smith's daughter live now? She lives there, but she is not at home. 4. To-day I saw the king's horses, they are very handsome. 5. I showed Mary the trees from which the apples came. 6. (With) those horses he drove many a year. 7. We have hands and feet. 8. The daughter played after the son, as you said, but she did not play so well.

Lesson 6

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE AND ITS GROUP

I

Gin. Rein. The indefinite article ein a, an and its negative fein no are inflected as follows:

SINCULAR

| | m. | £. | n. | |
|------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|------|
| N. | ein | ein e | ein | a |
| G. | ein es | ein er | eines | of a |
| D. | ein em | ein er | ein em | to a |
| A . | ein en | eine | ein | a |

| | 8 | INGULAR | | | PLURAL | |
|----|----------------|----------------|----------------|-------|-----------------------|-------|
| | m. | f. | n. | | m.f.n. | |
| N. | fein | feine | Fein | no | f ein e | no |
| G. | fein es | fein er | teine3 | of no | feiner | of no |
| D. | feinem | fein er | fein em | to no | feinen | to no |
| A. | keinen | fein e | fein | no | t ein e | no |

Observe: (1) ein has no plural; (2) both words have three forms without ending (nom. sing. masc., nom. and acc. sing. neut.); (3) the endings of the other forms, of both words, are the same as the corresponding endings of biejer (p. 24).

VOCABULARY

| der Kaiser | die Raiser <i>emperor</i> |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| der Feind | die Feinde enemy |
| der Freund | die Freunde <i>friend</i> |
| - der Krieg | die Ariege war |
| 👝 der Weg | die Wege way, road |
| 🖚 die Stadt | die Städte town, city |
| ich fiel I fell | ich lief I ran |
| ich führe I lead | für, with acc., for |
| ich führte I led | -gegen, with acc., against |

1. Welcher Weg führt nach der Stadt? Diefer hier. 2. Herr Schmidt hat keine Söhne, und er hat nur eine Tochter, Fräulein Marie. 3. Der Raifer fiel im Kriege gegen die Feinde. 4. In jener Stadt hatten wir keine Freunde. 5. Karl ging in den Garten und suchte Üpfel für die Mädchen. 6. Ein Pferd hast du schon, aber du hast noch keinen Wagen. Warum bittest du Onkel Karl nicht? 7. Jeden Montag arbeitete er für einen Freund in der Stadt. 8. Wie kam es, daß das Pferd fiel? Es lief gegen einen Baum. 9. Frau Schmidt führte den Onkel in das Zimmer, in welchem die Töchter warteten. 10. "Ich habe genug," sagte er¹ oft, "kein König ist so reich wie ich."

¹In English the inverted order in interjected phrases (like said he, said I) is not unknown; in German no other order is allowed, because the words which precede, here 3ch habe genug, are always a part of the object of the verb. as piel is the object of habe in sentence 4^{a} of L. 3. 1.

1. He gave the girl an apple. 2. Who showed (led) Miss Mary into the room where we were singing? 3. In the cities $[there]^1$ are no trees. 4. He is showing Father the road which leads to the town. 5. I am living with (bei) a friend for whom I am working. 6. Mrs. Smith's sons fell in the war. 7. He ran against a window. 8. When we came home, we saw the emperor in a carriage drawn by six horses (in a carriage with six horses).

 $^1\,\mathrm{Omit}$ words in square brackets []; but translate words in parentheses ().

Π

Possessive Adjectives. The possessive adjectives below, when used attributively, that is, before a noun, are inflected like fein:

| Possessive adjectives | (Corresponding pers. pronouns) | Possessive adjectives | (Corresponding pers. pronouns) |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| mein <i>my</i> | (ich) | unser our | (wir) |
| dein thy, your | (du) | euer your | (ihr) |
| sein his | (er) | ihr <i>their</i> | (fie) |
| ihr her | (fie) | Jhr your | (Sie) |
| sein <i>its</i> | (e\$) | | |

Inflection of mein, unfer and euer with nouns:

| | my . | son | our da | ughter | your h | iorse |
|----|----------------|--------|-------------------|----------|------------------|---------|
| N. | mein | Sohn | uns(e)r e | Tochter | euer | Pferd |
| G. | mein es | Sohnes | unf(e)r er | Tochter | eu(e)res | Pferdes |
| D. | mein em | Sohne | unf(e)rer | Tochter | eu(e)rem | Pferde |
| А. | mein en | Sohn | uns(e)re | Tochter | euer | Pferd |
| N. | meine | Söhne | unf(e)r e | Töchter | eu(e)r e | Pferde |
| G. | mein er | Söhne | unf(e)rer | Töchter | eu(e)r er | Pferde |
| D. | mein en | Söhnen | unf(e)ren | Töchtern | eu(e)ren | Pferden |
| А. | mein e | Söhne | unf(e)re | Töchter | eu(e) re | Pferde |

The (e) in forms of unfer and euer with endings is often dropped. Sometimes the e of the endings em or en is dropped instead: unferm, unferm, euerm, euern.

VOCABULARY

| | das Wasser | die Wasser water |
|-----|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| | der Abend | die Abende evening |
| | die Nacht | die Nächte night |
| iđ) | stehe I stand | dunkel dark |
| iá | stand I stood | grün <i>green</i> |
| ich | glaube I believe, think | sohne, with acc., without |
| ich | glaubte I believed, thought | es gibt, followed by the acc., |

there is, there are

1. Ich glaube nicht, daß das Wasser schon warm genug ist. 2. Onkel Karl ist der Bruder meines Baters und deiner Mutter. 3. Jest werden die Bäume in unserm Garten schon grün. 4. Seines Bruders Freund tam heute abend 1 um fünf Uhr aus der Stadt. 5. Es gibt keine Apfel diefes Jahr. 6. Sie wohnt jest nicht mehr hier, sie wohnt bei ihrer Tochter. 7. Warum kommen Sie heute zu Jug? wo haben Sie 3hr Bferd ?- Mein Bferd ift krank. 8. Von Zeit zu Zeit kam er zu mir, aber ohne feinen Freund tam er nie. 9. 200 steht der Baum, welcher feine Apfel hat? Hier steht er. 10. 3ch sah, wie arm sie waren; aber sie gaben mehr als? euer Freund, und er ist reich. 11. Die Nacht war so bunkel, daß ich gegen einen Baum lief und fiel. 12. Sie glaubte nicht, was ich fagte, bis du tamft. 13. Standen Sie ober saßen Sie, als Sie sangen? 3ch stand.

¹Literally, to-day evening, i.e. this evening; abend being used adverbially is written with a small letter. $-2\mathfrak{A}$ is after a comparative means than.

1. I do not think that it is so dark in your room. 2. His horses are still sick. He drove (with) his brother's horses. 3. Where did their horses stand? They stood here. 4. Are there no apples this year? Yes, we have apples enough in our garden. 5. Didn't he live with his son? No, he lived with his daughter. 6. Is Charles coming this evening? Yes, but he is coming without his mother. 7. The water is not yet cold enough. 8. Now everything is growing green.

NOUNS

Lesson 7

NOUNS: CLASS III. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE DATIVE OR THE ACCUSATIVE

I

Review. Below is shown where the inflections of ber and of tein (ein, mein etc.) differ from that of biejer (jener etc.). These forms should be thoroughly mastered, because without them the inflection of adjectives cannot be understood.

| | 1 | Sing. Ma | sc. | 1 | Sing. Fe | em. | Si | ng. Neu | ıt. |
|----|-----|----------|--------|-----|----------|--------|--------------|---------|--------|
| N. | der | dieser | fein | bie | diese | feine | bas | diefes | fein |
| G. | des | dieses | feines | ber | diefer | feiner | bes | dieses | feines |
| D. | dem | diesem | feinem | ber | diejer | feiner | dem | diesem | feinem |
| А. | den | diejen | feinen | bie | diese | feine | ba8 ~ | dieses | fein |
| | | | | | | | | | |

Plur. Masc. Fem. Neut.

| N. | die | Dieje | feine |
|----|-----|--------|--------|
| G. | der | dieser | feiner |
| D. | den | diefen | feinen |
| A. | bie | diefe | feine |

Nouns. Class III forms the nominative plural by adding er to the nominative singular and always modifies the stemvowel -a, o, u, au of the singular becoming \ddot{a} , \ddot{o} , \ddot{u} , $\ddot{a}u$ in the plural.

Class III contains no feminines. Masculines and neuters form the oblique cases of the singular as in Class II (L. 5. Π).

For the oblique cases of the plural see L. 4. 11.

In Class III belong: 1. About fifty monosyllabic neuters. 2. About a dozen monosyllabic masculines.

Models:

| | h | 0 U8 E | man | | |
|----|-----|---------------|-----|--------|--|
| N. | das | Haus | der | Mann | |
| G. | des | Hauses | des | Mannes | |
| D. | dem | Hause | dem | Manne | |
| A. | das | Haus | den | Mann | |

| N | die | Häus er | die | Männes |
|----|-----|-----------------|-----|-----------------|
| G. | der | Häuser | ber | Männer |
| D. | den | Häus ern | den | Männ erv |
| A. | die | Häus er | die | Männ er |

VOCABULARY

| der Hund | die Hund e dog |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| der Stuhl | die Stühle chair |
| der Tisch | die Tische table |
| das Buch | die Bücher dook |
| das Dorf | die Dörf er village |
| das Feld | die Feld er field |
| - das Kind | die Kinder child |
| 👞 der Wald | die Wälder forest, woods |
| ich sprach I spoke | vier <i>four</i> |
| wenn whenever, if | -burch, with acc., through |
| drei three | um, with acc., around, about |

1. Wir haben zwei Füße und zwei hände. 2. Bögel haben auch zwei Füße, aber keine Hände. 3. Pferde und Hunde haben vier Füße und keine Hände. 4. Als diefe Stadt noch ein Dorf war, stand unser haus hier, wo wir jest stehen; und um das haus lag ein Garten, groß und schön. 5. Sch sah, daß er gestern abend mit eurem Bruder sprach, aber ich hörte nicht, was sie sagten. Sch hörte nur, daß er etwas fragte und euer Bruder antwortete. 6. In ihrem Zimmer stand ein Tisch mit Büchern, und um den Tisch standen drei Stühle. 7. Wenn¹ der Mann Ihr Freund ist, so² ift er auch mein Freund. 8. Die Kinder liefen aus dem Garten burch das Wasser ins (= in das) Feld. 9. Heute abend, als 1 cs schon dunkel war, ritten zwei Männer zu Pferde durch unser Dorf. Ich glaube, sie ritten nach der Stadt. 10. Wenn¹ es warm wird, fo² werden auch die Kelder und Bälder bald arün.

¹ Benn means whenever or *if*, and is used with a verb in the present, past or future; als means when, at the time when, as, and is used only with verbs in the past tenses. -2 So is often used to introduce the principal clause after a preceding subordinate clause. It may sometimes be rendered by then, as here, but usually it is left untranslated.

- wenn

1. I saw your brother as he spoke with your father. 2. I had a dog and a horse. 3. Now the woods and fields are getting green. 4. If he comes, (jo) he comes with his friends. 5. She was so good that she had no enemies. 6. The dogs ran through the garden into the field. 7. In the village and around the village stood trees. 8. Whenever he ran, (jo) he fell. 9. I had but three chairs in my room, you had four. 10. I saw only a table with books, but no chair. 11. The man gave the child something, but I did not see what it was.

II

Prepositions with the Dative or Accusative. The following nine prepositions govern the dative in answer to the questions where ? and when ? i. e. with verbs denoting either rest or else motion within certain limits, e. g. motion in a circle or motion to and fro. They govern the accusative in answer to the questions whither ? and how long ? i. e. with verbs denoting motion towards an object or any limit:

an at, on, to, up to auf up, upon, on, on top of hinter behind in in, into up, upon, on, on top of hinter behind unter under, beneath, among bor before, in front of ywifchen between

VOCABULARY

| ich lege I lay | ich setze I set |
|------------------|------------------|
| ich legte I laid | ich setzte I set |

Sich, the reflexive pronoun of the third person, singular and plural, is used for all genders and means therefore himself, herself, itself, themselves and, with Sie, also yourself or yourselves, e. g. er set fich he seats himself, sie seats herself, Sie set source or yourselves.

Take the sentences below in the following order: $1-1^{\circ}$, $2-2^{\circ}$ etc.

1. Jest sit Marie an jenem Tische und arbeitet.

2. Als ich kam, lagen die Bücher auf einem Stuhle.

3. Der Baum, von welchem wir sprachen, stand hinter unser**em** Hause.

4. Du warst in diesem Zimmer.

5. Jch saß neben mein**em** Freunde.

6. Wo ist 3hr Zimmer? Über diesem.

7. 3ch hörte etwas unter meinem Fenster.

8. Er war schon vor dem Kriege frank.

9. Er ritt zwischen dem Kaiser und dem König. 1ª Sie sette sich an jenen Tisch und arbeitete.

2ª Wir nahmen die Bücher von den Stühlen und legten sie auf den Tisch da.

3ª- Als die Kinder den Mann fahen, liefen sie hinter d**as** Haus.

4ª. Du gingst in jenes Zimmer.

5ª. Er sett sich neben sein**en** Bruder.

6ª Der Hund lief durch das Wasser und über d**as** Feld.

7ª Das Buch fiel unter den Tisch.

8ª. Der Wagen fuhr vor d**as** Haus.

9ª. Er ritt zwischen den Raiser und den Rönig.

ł

1. We set his chair between the table and the window. 2. Did you sit beside my brother? No, I sat beside your mother. 3. Who laid this book upon my table? 4. I found the dog under the carriage. 5. Before that night he was not very ill. 6. They led the man before his enemy. 7. Here we are among friends. 8. He ran behind a tree which stood in front of the house. 9. On (an) that day it was very warm. 10. They rode across the fields and came to (an) the water. 11. On (auf) my way to (\mathfrak{zu}) Father's I saw the king in a carriage drawn by six horses (in a carriage with six horses).

Lesson 8

NOUNS: CLASS IV. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Ι

Nouns. Class IV forms the nominative plural by adding n or en to the nominative singular and never modifies the stemvowel. — Nouns in e, ef or er add n, others en.

Class IV contains no neuters. Masculines form the oblique cases of the singular like the nominative plural.

For the oblique cases of the plural and for the singular of feminines, see L. 4. 11.

In Class IV belong: 1. With the exception of Mutter and Tochter (Cl. I), all feminines of more than one syllable — among these are all nouns with the suffixes ei, heit, in, feit, ichaft or ung, and most nouns in e.

2. About sixty monosyllabic feminines.

3. About twenty monosyllabic masculines.

Der Herr gentleman, Mr. is irregular, adding only n in the singular: des, dem, den Herrn (but en in the plural: die, der, den, die Herren).

Nouns in in double the n in the plural.

Models:

| | wo | ma n | ſ | lower | | quee n |
|----|-----|----------------|-----|----------------|-----|---------------------------|
| N. | die | Frau | die | Blume | die | Königi n |
| G. | der | Frau | der | Blume | der | <u> Rönigin</u> |
| D. | der | Frau | der | Blume | ber | <u> Rönigin</u> |
| A. | die | Frau | die | Blume | die | Rönigi n |
| N. | die | Frau en | die | Blumen | die | <u> Röniginnen</u> |
| G. | der | Frau en | ber | Blume n | der | Königinn en |
| D. | den | Frauen | den | Blumen | den | Königinn en |
| А. | die | Frau en | die | Blumen | die | Königinn en |

BEGINNING GERMAN

| 17 | an, I | human being | | boy |
|----|-------|------------------|-----|----------------|
| N. | der | Mensch | der | Anabe |
| G. | des | Menschen | des | Anabe n |
| D. | dem | Menschen | dem | Rnabe n |
| A. | den | Menschen | den | Anabe n |
| N. | die | Menschen | die | Anabe n |
| G. | der | Mensch en | der | Anabe n |
| D. | den | Menschen | den | <i>Anaben</i> |
| A. | die | Menschen | die | Anabe n |

VOCABULARY

| der | Morgen | die | Morgen morning |
|-------------|--------|-----|----------------|
| der | Fluß | die | Flüsse river |
| ber | Gott | die | Götter god |
| die | Seite | die | Seiten side |
| | | | |

bort there, yonder
 enblich finally, at last

man, indef. pron., one, they, people

1

morgen to-morrow

felbst, emphatic, not reflexive pron., himself, herself, itself, ourselves etc.

1. In den Feldern fah man Männer und Frauen, Anaben und Mädchen, welche arbeiteten. 2. Könige und Raiser sind auch Menschen. 3. Die Stadt liegt auf dieser Seite des Flusses, das Dorf auf jener. 4. Es gibt nur einen¹ Gott. 5. Die Frauen und Mädchen hatten Blumen für die Königin. 6. An (on) jenem Mörgen kamen die Herren selbst. 7. Endlich wurden meine Hände und Füße warm. 8. Wenn du morgen nicht um fünf Uhr hier bist, so warte ich nicht. 9. Sie gab nur wenig, denn sie hatte selbst nicht viel. 10. Karl war nicht unter den Anaben, welche dort hinter dem Hause spielten. 11. Ich fand Herrn Schmidt im Garten, er sag an einem Tische, welcher unter einem Baum stand, und hatte zwei Bücher vor sich.² 12. Ich glaube an (in) einen¹ Gott.

¹In 4: one, because emphatic; in $12: a. - {}^{2}Before him.$ English often uses the simple personal pronoun where German requires the reflexive.

1. She was as handsome as a queen. 2. We found no flowers in your garden. 3. Finally he said himself that the boys were still playing, when ¹ he came. 4. On which side of the river lay the village? On this side. 5. It grew so cold this (heute) morning that we stayed at home. 6. One does not work well, when ¹ it is so warm. 7. Yonder, in front of his house, stood the tree under which we used to play (always played). 8. The woman comes to-morrow, her daughter is here already (already here²). 9. And our enemies — are they not also men (human beings)?

¹Mis or menn? L. 7, 1, n. ¹.—²As a rule, an adverb of time precedes an adverb of place.

Π

Personal Pronouns. In the inflection of the personal pronouns below, the genitives are bracketed because they are rare and will not be used for the present.

SPCOND PEPSON

TIDOT DEDGON

| | FIRST PERSON | SECON | D PERSON |
|----|--------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| | SINGULAR | SINGULAR | SING. AND PLUR. |
| N. | ich I | du thou, you | Sie you |
| G. | [meiner, mein of me] [d | einer, dein of thee, | of you] [Jhrer of you] |
| | mir to me | | |
| | mich <i>mo</i> | dich thee, you | |
| | PLURAL | PLURAL | |
| N. | wir <i>we</i> | ihr ye, yo u | |
| G. | [unser of us] | [euer of you] | |
| | uns to us | euch to you | |
| А. | uns <i>us</i> | euch you | |
| | THIRD | PERSON SINGULA | R |
| | masc. | fem. | neut. |
| | N. er he | sie she | es it |
| | G. [seiner, sein of him] | [ihrer of her] | [seiner, sein of u] |
| | D. ihm to him | ihr to her | ihm to it |
| | A. ihn him | fie her | e8 it |
| | | | |

THIRD PERSON PLURAL

m. f. n. N. fie they G. [ihrer of them] D. ihnen to them A. fie them

Instead of learning a new Vocabulary, the student may study the following table of endings used in the inflection of nouns:

| (| Class I | Class II | Class III | Class IV |
|----|----------------|----------------|-----------|----------|
| N. | - | | | <u> </u> |
| G. | \$ | (e)\$ | (e)\$ | (e)n |
| D. | - | (e) | (e) | —(e)n |
| A. | | - | — | —(e)n |
| N. | <u>(,)</u> | <u>(,)e</u> | -"er | (e)n |
| G. | <u>(,,)</u> | <u>(,,)</u> e | _"er | —(e)n |
| D. | <u>(,)</u> (n) | <u>(,,)</u> en | -"ern | (e)n |
| А. | <u>(,)</u> | <u>(,,)</u> e | er | —(e)n |

1. Wo haft bu das Buch, welches ich dir heute morgen gab? Ich habe es nicht mehr, ich gab es ihr. 2. Was fragt er dich? Er fragt mich, wer gestern mit uns fuhr. 3. Es gibt Menschen, welche auch gut gegen (towards) ihre Feinde sind. 4. Sie baten uns so lange, dis wir mit ihnen spielten. 5. Wenn du morgen zu mir kommst, so sindest du sie auch da. 6. Vor uns auf dem Tische standen Blumen und Üpfel aus seinem Garten. 7. Man sauch. 8. Wann kam Ihr Bruder gestern nach Hause? Ich sah oder hörte ihn nicht, es war schon Nacht. 9. Wie lange wohnt¹ Frau Schmidt, aber ich sie such²? Sie wohnt¹ schon fünf Iahre bei uns². 10. Was antwortete sie Ihnen, als Sie sie sieht glaubte. 11. Wer wohnt über Ihnen? — Mein Freund Schmidt. — Und über ihm? — Der Herr, welcher gestern Abend hinter uns sah.

¹German uses the present, often with form, to denote an act or a state which began in the past and continues in the present; transl... has... been living...² with you or at your house, and bet uns with us or at our house. —³ Glauben takes the dative of the person.

36

્રુ

1. Who was sitting behind you? My friend Smith was sitting behind me. 2. Is Charles playing with them or with you? With us. 3. When he came to us, he was very poor and always worked (worked always) for us, but now he has more than we. 4. Did he ask you or her? — Me. — And what did you answer him (dat.)? — I told him that I was not there when he saw you. 5. Did you come before them or after them? I came with them. 6. Did Mr. Smith give her anything? Yes, he gave her something, but I don't think that it was much. 7. Under me lives the gentleman whom I pointed out (showed) to you yesterday.

Lesson 9

THE PRONOUNS Der, Wer, Was. SUBSTITUTES FOR PRONOUNS

Ι

Der, as demonstrative pronoun meaning that, that one, he, she, it etc., and ber, as relative pronoun meaning who, which, that, are inflected alike :

| SINGULAR | | | | PLURAL |
|----------|--------|-------|-------------|--------|
| | m. | f. | n. | m.f.n. |
| N. | der | die | das | die |
| G. | dessen | deren | dessen | deren |
| D. | dem | der | dem | denen |
| A. | den | die | da 8 | die |

Ser, as interrogative pronoun meaning who, and wer, as relative pronoun meaning whoever or he who, are inflected alike. Sas, as interrogative pronoun meaning what, and was, as relative pronoun meaning whatever or that which, are also inflected alike. Both wer and was have no plural, and was lacks also the dative:

| N. | wer | N. | was |
|----|--------|----|---------|
| G. | wessen | G. | wessen |
| D. | wem | D. | wanting |
| A. | wen | A. | was |

VOCABULARY

| bas Geld | die Gelder money |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| die Schwester | die Schwestern sister |
| die Tür | die Türen door |
| er starb he died | oben above, up-stairs |
| er lebt he lives | unten below, down-stairs |
| er lebte he lived | wahr <i>true</i> |
| | |

1. Für wen arbeitet er jett ?— Für den Herrn, bei dem¹ ich wohne. — Ift das der Herr, den¹ Sie mir gestern zeigten ? — Nein, es ist der, dessen Ander immer mit meinen Kindern spielen. Sie sahen ihn nicht, als Sie gestern zu uns kamen, weil er nicht zu hause war. 2. Was er Ihnen sagte, das² ist wahr. 3. Wessen Pferde sind das?⁸ Es³ sind Karls Pferde. 4. Lebt Herr Schmidt noch? — Nein, er starb vor⁴ einem Iahre. Aber sein Bruder, der lebt noch, er wohnt jett bei uns. — Oben? — Nein, oben wohnen wir selbst, er wohnt unten. 5. Sahen Sie, wem er das Geld gab? Nein, das sah ich nicht. 6. Wen suchen Sie, mein Freund? — Meine Schwestern. — Die sind nicht mehr hier. 7. Unten vor der Tür lag ein Hund. 8. Die Mutter starb vor⁴ drei oder vier Tagen, aber als die Tochter mit ihren Kindern kam, lebte sie noch. 9. Dies³ ist meine Schwester, das³ ist mein Bruder, und das³ sind unfere Freunde.

¹The choice between the relative pronouns ber and weider is largely a matter of euphony; thus, instead of bem one might here say weidem and instead of ben, weiden. But in the genitive (sing. or plur.) the forms of ber are the only ones in use, hence it would not do to say "weides" Rinber for beijen Rinber. —² The demonstrative bas is not required here, but is often used to sum up or refer to what goes before. In English it is rendered only when it is emphatic. —⁸ Es, bas and biejes (contracted bies) often serve as the indefinite subject of some form of jein be with a predicate nominative of any gender, the verb agreeing in number with the predicate. This sounds as if Germans said whose horses are that ? instead of those, or it are Charles's instead of they are Charles's etc. —⁴ Here, as often, ago.

He (demonst.) is rich, but his sisters have no money.
 From whom did you hear that? From Charles's friends.
 What is lying there in front of your door? That's my dog.
 Is this the gentleman whose son plays and sings from time

to time with your daughters? Yes, he (demonst.) is the one (is it). 5. In whose room did she die?—In her mother's room, up-stairs.—When?—Four or five days ago, on¹ Monday, I think.²—Was she still living when her brothers and sisters came home?—No. 6. These are the books that I found down-stairs. 7. Whatever I had (that) I gave her. 8. For her (demonst.) he lived and died.

¹ On is here an, and, contracted with the definite article, which is usually required before the names of the days of the week, it becomes am (for an bem). $-^{2}$ The usual equivalent for *I think* is in glaube, and here, where the inverted order is called for, glaube in.

П

VOCABULARY

die Feder die Federn pen, feather ich schreibe I write ich schrieb I wrote daran thereat, at it, at them woran whereat, at what barauf thereupon, on it, on them worauf whereon, on what wofür wherefor, for what dafür therefor, for it, for them darin therein, in it, in them worin wherein, in what damit therewith, with it, with womit wherewith, with what them bavon thereof, of it, of them, wovon whereof, of what, about what about it, about them Take the sentences below in the following order, 1, 2, 3 etc., 1ª, 2ª, 3ª etc. 1. Hier ift ein Tisch mit zwei 1ª Woran (of what) starb er? Stühlen daran. 2ª Worauf stand er, als er 2. Der Tisch stand da, aber Bücher lagen nicht darauf. sprach? Auf einem Stuhle. 3. Er gab mir die Feder, und . 3ª. Wofür ift das Geld, das Sie mir gaben? Für die Bücher. ich gab ihm das Buch dafür. 4. Das Haus ift nicht groß 4ª. Er sagte nicht, worin er es genug, weil nur sechs Zimmer fand. darin sind.

41

5. Die Federn sind noch gut, aber ich schreibe nicht mehr damit.

6. Davon sagte er mir gestern nichts.

Sentences 1-6 show that German substitutes for personal pronouns of the third person, when referring to objects without life and governed by a preposition, the adverb ba (before vowels bar) followed by the preposition. Thus, in 1, baran stands for an ihm; in 3, bafür stands for für für etc. 5- Womit schreibst du? Mit beiner Feder.

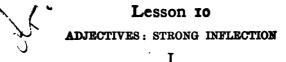
6ª Wovon sprechen sie?

Sentences 1^a-6^a show that German substitutes for the missing dative of mas and for the accusative mas, when governed by a preposition, the adverb mo (before vowels mor) followed by the preposition. Thus, in 1^a, moran stands for an with the missing dative of mas; in 3^a, mojür stands for jür mas etc.

The adverbs moran, morauf etc., are similarly used instead of a preposition with the dative or accusative of ber or melcher, as shown below.

1. Der Wagen, worin (for in dem or in welchem) er kam, war mein Wagen. 2. Die Feder, womit (for mit der or mit welcher) ich schreibe, ist nicht sehr gut.

1. Here are the books. Have you the money for them?— Yes, here it is. 2. He showed me a room with no table in it. 3. The tree at which he stood was not so tall as this one. 4. What is a forest in which there are no birds? 5. Didn't you see a table in her room, with books on it? 6. I said nothing about his being here yesterday (nothing thereof that he yesterday here was). 7. She took a pen from the table and wrote with it. 8. We saw the room in which Schiller died.



Strong Endings. Pronominal Adjectives. The endings of biefer, jener etc., as also those of the two articles, are called the Strong Endings; and all these words, when used adjec-

ADJECTIVES

tively (or before nouns) are called Pronominal Adjectives, because most of them are of pronominal origin.

Descriptive Adjectives. From the Pronominal Adjectives we distinguish the ordinary or Descriptive Adjectives, as groß tall or jchön handsome.

A descriptive adjective is not inflected when used predicatively, that is, when modifying a noun by means of a verb, e.g. bie Anaben find groß the boys are tall. But when a descriptive adjective is used attributively, that is, when it modifies a noun (expressed or understood) directly, as tall modifies boys in the sentence tall boys run fast, it takes the strong endings, like biefer, jener etc., provided that it is not preceded by a pronominal adjective which itself has a strong ending.

How the descriptive adjective is treated when it is preceded by a pronominal adjective with a strong ending will be explained in L. 11.

| | Sing. | Masc. | Sing. | Fem. | Sing. | Neut. |
|----|-------|--------|--------|-------|-------|--------|
| | good | man | good u | voman | good | child |
| N. | guter | Mann | gute | Frau | gutes | Kind |
| G. | gutes | Mannes | guter | Frau | gutes | Kindes |
| D. | gutem | Manne | guter | Frau | gutem | Kinde |
| А. | guten | Mann | gute | Frau | gutes | Kind |

Plur. Masc. Fem. Neut.

good men, women, children

| N. | gute | Männer, | Frauen, | Kinder |
|----|-------|----------|---------|---------|
| G. | guter | Männer, | Frauen, | Kinder |
| D. | guten | Männern, | Frauen, | Kindern |
| А. | gute | Männer, | Frauen, | Kinder |

VOCABULARY

| der Brief | die Briefe letter |
|-----------------|------------------------------|
| das Land | die Länder land, country |
| das Schloß | die Schlösser castle, palace |
| die Kirche | die Kirchen church |
| die Straße | die Straßen street |
| die Leute, plur | . only, people, persons |

| ich kaufe I buy | neu new |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| ich kaufte I bought | lang <i>long</i> |
| alt old | furz short |
| jung <i>young</i> | schlecht bad, poor |

1. Sein Vater hat einen Garten mit großen Bäumen und schönen Blumen darin. 2. Mein Freund schreibt oft an mich, aber lange Briese schreibt er nie. 3. Es ist wahr, dieses Land ist nicht sehr groß, aber es ist ein Land, welches große und reiche Städte mit schönen alten Häusern, Schlössern und Kirchen hat. 4. Das sind schlechte Federn, solche fause ich nicht, denn ich schreibe nur mit guten.¹ 5. Er sührte uns durch vier oder fünf kurze Straßen, vor beren Häusern nur alte kranke Männer und Frauen saßen oder kleine Kinder spielten. "Junge Leute," sagte er, "sindet man am Tage hier nicht, weil sie von Morgen bis Ubend auf dem Felde arbeiten." 6. Wenn er alte Bücher kauste, so gab er ost mehr Geld dafür als für neue.¹ 7. Warum schreidst du mir nicht, alter Freund?

¹Good ones. The ending of the German adjective, agreeing with the noun understood, corresponds here to the pronoun one or ones which English substitutes for the noun understood; so in sentence 6.

1. You are good children. 2. Mr. Smith has handsome horses. 3. Those (bie3) are poor apples. 4. We have cold water enough. 5. Many of them were the children of poor people. 6. "Good evening" (acc.), he said, as he came into the room. 7. He had good books and bad ones. 8. Does he write you long letters? No, his letters are always very short. 8. From there we saw beautiful old castles and churches.

Π

It follows from what was said above that descriptive adjectives must have strong endings (not only when they are not preceded by any modifier at all, as in the Models and in the sentences of the first part of this lesson, but also) after all pronominal or other modifiers which themselves lack these strong endings; hence 1. After the nom. sing. masc. and the nom. and acc. sing. neuter of the indefinite article and other words of its group.

2. After words or forms like the following:

| etwas some, a little | weldy what a, what, which |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mehr <i>more</i> | viel much, many |
| mallerlei all kinds of | wenig little, feu |
| Dielerlei many kinds of | zwei two |
| genug enough | drei thres |
| manch many a, many | vier four and other undeclined |
| fold such a, such | numerals |

In Lesson 5. I, manch, fold, and weld, are given with strong endings. Before ordinary or descriptive adjectives, these words often appear in their stem-form, with no great difference in meaning from their inflected forms, except that weld, is chiefly used in exclamations and with the meaning of what, what a, e. g. weld, großer Wann! what a tall man!

1. Vor unserm Hause stand ein großer alter Baum, unter bem wir Knaben oft spielten. 2. Haben Sie kein kleines Gelb¹ bei sich²? Ja, aber nicht viel. 3. Mein guter Vater starb vor sechs Jahren. 4. Euer neuer Wagen steht schon vor eurer Tür. 5. Der gab mir manch schönen Apsel, als ich noch ein kleiner Knabe war. 6. In der Stadt gibt es nicht so viel grüne Bäume, wie hier auf dem Lande.⁸ 7. Wir hatten nicht genug warmes Wasser. 8. Dort kommen zwei junge Herren mit zwei großen Hunden. 9. Das ist viel Gelb für solch schlechtes Land. 10. Nein, das geht nicht,⁴ mein guter Freund. 11. Bald kam Fräulein Marie aus dem Gar= ten, sie hatte allerlei schöne Blumen in der⁵ Hand und legte sie auf den Tisch. 12. "Welch großes Zimmer und welch kleine Fen= ster !" sagte sie, "hier ist es dunkele Nacht!" 13. Wir gaben ihr etwas kaltes Wasser.

¹Small money, i.e. change. $-^2$ with you or in your pocket. $-^3$ The regular phrase for in the country, as distinguished from the city. $-^4$ won't do. $-^5$ in her hand. When no ambiguity can arise, German often uses the def. art. in place of a possessive adjective.

1. I have many a good friend in your city. 2. Why do you buy such poor pens? 3. Have you enough change with you? I have some, but not very much. 4. There are many kinds of bad books. 5. You gave me but very little warm water, have you no (not) more? 6. He always drove (with) two young horses. 7. What beautiful flowers those ¹ are ! 8. Why won't it do, my young friend?

¹L. 9. I. n. ⁸.

Lesson II

ADJECTIVES: WEAK INFLECTION

I

Weak Endings. When a descriptive adjective is preceded by biejer, jener etc., by the definite article, or by any form of the indefinite article or other pronominal word with a strong ending, it takes the

WEAK ENDINGS

| | | PLURAI | | |
|----|----|--------|----|--------|
| | m. | f. | n. | m.f.n. |
| N. | e | e | e | en |
| G. | en | en | en | en |
| D. | en | en | en | en |
| A. | en | e | e | en |

Notice carefully the five forms in **bold-faced** type.

Models:

SING. MASC.

this or the good man

| N. | dieser | or | ber | gute | Mann |
|----|--------|----|-----|-------|--------|
| G. | dieses | or | beø | guten | Mannes |
| D. | diesem | or | dem | guten | Manne |
| А. | diesen | or | den | guten | Mann |

SING. FEM.

this or the good woman

| N. | diese | or | die | gute | Frau |
|----|--------|----|-----|---------------|------|
| G. | dieser | or | der | guten | Frau |
| D. | dieser | or | der | gut en | Frau |
| A. | diese | or | die | gute | Frau |

46

SING. NEUT.

| this | or | the | good | child |
|------|----|-----|------|-------|
|------|----|-----|------|-------|

| N. | dieses | or | das | gute | Kind |
|----|--------|----|-----|-------|--------|
| G. | dieses | or | des | guten | Kindes |
| D. | diesem | or | dem | guten | Kinde |
| A. | dieses | or | daø | gute | Kind |

PLUR. MASC. FEM. NEUT.

| | these | 9 or | the | good me | en, women, | children | |
|----|--------|------|-----|---------|------------|----------|---------|
| N. | diese | or | die | guten | Männer, | Frauen, | Kinder |
| G. | diefer | or | der | guten | Männer, | Frauen, | Kinder |
| D. | diesen | or | den | guten | Männern, | Frauen, | Kindern |
| A. | diese | or | die | guten | Männer, | Frauen, | Kinder |

VOCABULARY

| der Sommer | die Sommer summer |
|------------------|---------------------------|
| der Winter | die Winter winter |
| das <i>Kleid</i> | die Kleid er dress |
| die Schule | die Schulen school |
| die Eltern, | plur. only, parents |
| | |

| ich | meine I mean | ich trug I carried, wore |
|-----|----------------|--------------------------|
| ich | meinte I meant | lieb dear |

1. Der gab mir manch schönes Buch. 2. Der gab mir manches schöne Buch. 3. Unfer kleiner Sohn geht noch nicht zur 1 Schule. 4. Wir nahmen unfre kleine Tochter mit uns zur¹ Kirche. 5. Es gibt keine guten Upfel biefes Jahr. 6. Es gibt mehr schlechte Upfel biejes Jahr, als gute. 8. In diefer dunklen 2 Straße wohnten nur arme Leute. 8. Es war Winter, und sie trug ein dunkles² Kleid. 9. Wo ist der reiche Berr, deffen neues haus wir gestern fahen? 10. Welches neue haus meinen Sie? Das neue ba unten am Flusse. 11. In jenem langen Kriege fiel auch mein lieber Freund 12. Endlich, lieber Freund, komme ich zu dir! 13. Sie Karl. find Söhne reicher Eltern. 14. Er hatte reiche Eltern. 15. Wel= chen meinten Sie, den alten oder den jungen herrn Schmidt?-Ich meinte den, der im 8 Sommer hier bei Ihnen auf dem Lande wohnte. — Das ist ber junge.

¹ Sur = j u ber. These are the regular expressions for to go to school or to church, which in English require no article. — ³ Adjectives in unaccented ef, en and er often drop the e of these syllables in inflection; compare the inflection of unjer and euer, L. 6. 11. — ³ Literally in the summer. The names of the seasons usually require the def. art., compare L. 9. 1. n.¹, English Exercise.

1. I found my old book, but not the new one. 2. Yesterday she wore her green dress. 3. That was my young friend. 4. These little boys do not yet go to school. 5. Why do you always write such (use folth, without ending) short letters? 6. Victoria was a good queen, I think. 7. In that school you find only children of rich parents. 8. I meant the long pen with which I wrote yesterday, not the short one. 9. In winter the days are not so long as in summer. 10. She lived and worked only for her dear old mother. 11. That is the house of a very rich old man.

Π

The Principle of Double Adjective Inflection restated. We have now seen that every ordinary or descriptive adjective, when used attributively, is subject to two modes of inflection, the strong and the weak, and that its ending in every case or form depends on what kind of modifier, if any, precedes it. If this is a word without strong ending, or if no modifier precedes, the adjective takes the strong ending of its case, number and gender; but if the preceding modifier has itself a strong ending, then this is not repeated on the adjective, but changed to a weak ending, e or en. In four forms, however, the weak endings coincide with the strong, and in these the endings, though called strong and weak respectively, are distinguished only in name. - The table below shows the combinations of strong and weak endings, the forms in which they coincide being given only once. The inflections below of fein and gut before nouns of all genders are the best suited to make the beginner grasp the application of the principle of inflection, because they exhibit both kinds of endings. In them, the strong endings of gut are put in bold-faced type, and the forms in which strong and weak endings coincide are marked with an asterisk,

ADJECTIVES

STRONG AND WEAK ENDINGS COMBINED

| | | SINGULAR | | PLURAL |
|----|-------|----------|-------|----------|
| | masc. | fem. | neut. | m.f.n. |
| | s. w. | s. w. | s. w. | s. w. |
| N. | er e | e | eð e | N. e en |
| G. | es en | er en | es en | G. er en |
| D. | em en | er en | em en | D. en |
| А. | en | e | es e | A. e en |

Models:

| | SI | NG. MA | SC. | 811 | IG. FE | CM. | SIN | G. NE | UT. |
|----|--------|---------------|--------|--------|--------|------|--------|-------|--------|
| N. | fein | gut er | Mann | feine | gute * | Frau | fein | gutes | Kind |
| G. | keines | guten | Mannes | feiner | guten | Frau | feines | guten | Kindes |
| D. | feinem | guten | Manne | feiner | guten | Frau | feinem | guten | Kinde |
| A. | feinen | guten * | Mann | feine | gute * | Frau | fein | gutes | Kind |

PLURAL

| N. | feine | guten | Männer, | Frauen, | Kinder |
|----|--------|--------|----------|---------|---------|
| G. | feiner | guten | Männer, | Frauen, | Kinder |
| D. | feinen | guten* | Männern, | Frauen, | Kindern |
| A. | feine | guten | Männer, | Frauen, | Kinder |

Supply the proper endings and inflect: ein groß- Tisch a large table, tein klein- Psjerd no small horse, mein neu- Buch my new book, ihr- lieb-Mutter their dear mother, dies- alt- Feder this old pen, dein jung- Freund your young friend.

·Lesson 12

PRONOMINAL WORDS WITH STRONG AND WEAK INFLECTION

I

The principle of double inflection with strong and weak endings applies also to two groups of words — mostly pro nouns, pronominal adjectives and indefinite numerals — which, like descriptive adjectives, can be used both with and without the definite or indefinite article.

Group I (only the stems are given in this list):

| ander— | other, different | wenig- | little, | few |
|--------|------------------|--------|---------|--------|
| beid— | both, two | jed- | each, | every |
| viel- | much, many | fold- | such, | such a |

49

EXAMPLES WITH STRONG FORMS

- er hat ein ander**es** Buch he has another book
- beide Söhne sind hier both sons are here
- ich höre viele Vögel I hear many birds
- mit nur wenigem Gelde with but little money

jedes Kindes of every child

ein solcher Mann such a man

EXAMPLES WITH WEAK FORMS

- er hat das andere Buch he has the other book
- die beiden Söhne sind hier the two (both the) sons are here
- ich höre die vielen Bögel I hear the (many) numerous birds
- mit dem wenigen Gelde with the (little) small-amount-of money
- eines jeden Kindes of every (single) child
- eines solchen Mannes of such a man

VOCABULARY

| ich mache I make, do | ich trinke I drink |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| ich machte I made, did | ich trank I drank |
| heiß hot | leicht light, easy |

1. Darauf führte er die beiden Mädchen in einen anderen Wald, worin sie andere Blumen fanden. 2. Beide Brüder, glaube ich, standen auf der Straße vor der Tür. 3. Wenn es im Sommer fehr heiß ist und man zu viel kaltes Basser trinkt, so wird man leicht krank. 4. Ich frage dich, was sie mit ihrem vielen Gelde machte und ob sie den armen Leuten etwas davon gab. 5. Die anderen tamen gestern. 6. Seder gute Mensch hat seine Feinde, fagt man oft, aber ich glaube das nicht. 7. Ein jeder von ihnen hat ein solches Pferd. 8. Gott ist der Freund und Vater eines jeden Menschen, ob er arm oder reich ist. 9. Wer solcher guten Menschen Feind ist, der ist felbst kein guter Mensch. 10. In den Straßen anderer Städte sah ich Wagen, in denen man ohne Pferde fuhr. 11. Das wenige Geld, welches ich armen Leuten gab, machte sie nicht reich und mich nicht arm. 12. Ihr kauft gutes Land, wie ich höre, aber auch vieles schlechte or viel schlechtes. 13. Das Waf= fer war viel zu warm, ich trank es nicht. 14. Beider Anaben Bäter waren sehr reich.

1. You find no such trees in the city as (wie) these here in our little village. 2. These boys were playing, the others were working. 3. Thereupon he gave her another book. 4. It was very hot, and he drank too much (viel without ending) cold water. 5. There both my (my both) sisters are coming with two young gentlemen. 6. What did he do with the little money (which¹) he had? He bought this little house with it (therefor). 7. Every good book is a good friend. 8. I find but one chair. Where is the other?

¹The relative is never omitted in German.

п

Group II (only the nominatives of the singular are given in this list):

STRONG FORMS

WEAK FORMS

| ein er, | -e, | - es one | der, | die, | das eine the one |
|------------------|-----|--------------------|------|------|------------------------------|
| mein er, | -e, | -es mine | ber, | die, | das mein e mino |
| dein er , | -e, | – e S yours | der, | die, | das dein e yours |
| sein er , | -e, | -es his | der, | die, | das seine his |
| ihr er , | -e, | –es hers | der, | die, | das ihr e hers |
| seiner, | -e, | –es its | der, | die, | das seine its |
| unj(e)rer, | -e, | – e S ours | der, | die, | das uns(e)re ours |
| eu(e)rer, | -e, | – e S yours | der, | die, | das eu(e)re yours |
| ihr er , | -e, | -co theirs | der, | die, | das ihre theirs |
| 3hrer, | -e, | – es yours | der, | die, | das <i><i>Thre</i> yours</i> |
| | | | | | |

These forms are pronouns only, except ber, bie, bas eine, which is also used as attributive adjective: bas eine \mathfrak{Buch} the one book. They must be carefully distinguished from the attributive adjectives in Lesson 6. All the stems in Lesson 6 occur here again, except fein (for which see L. 13). The weak forms of the possessive pronouns above are less common than the strong.

VOCABULARY

| der Berg | die Berge mountain |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ► das Tier | die Tiere animal, beast |
| ich schlief I slept | hoch * high, tall |
| faul <i>lazy</i> | stark strong |
| Gat drame the sim influction. | ala Kakan Mana Jana San Mana Ili Kaka |

* hoch drops the c in inflection: ein hoher Berg (but ber Berg ist hoch).

| fleißig diligent, industrious | ftill <i>still, quiet</i> | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|--|
| ganz whole, entire | tot dead | | |
| -glücklich happy | da, conj., since, as | | |
| es war einmal there was once, once | upon a time there was | | |

1. Unfer Dorf liegt auf diefer Seite jenes hohen Berges, eures (or bas eure) auf der anderen. 2. Finde ich1 meine Feder nicht (= wenn ich meine Feder nicht finde), so schreibe ich mit ihrer (or mit der ihren). 3. Da eines von feinen Pferden frank murde, fo nahm er meine (or bie meinen) und fuhr mit ihnen nach der Stadt. 4. Meine guten alten Freunde sind schon tot, aber von Shren (or von den Ihren) leben noch viele. 5. Es war einmal ein Mann, ber hatte zwei Söhne. Der eine war fleißig und arbeitete den gan= zen Tag, von Morgen bis Abend; der andere aber war faul und schlief mehr, als er arbeitete. 6. Große Leute sind nicht immer stark, und reiche nicht immer glücklich. 7. Er setzte sich an meinen Tisch, weil auf deinem (or auf dem deinen) so viele Bücher lagen. 8. Einer von ihnen blieb die ganze Nacht bei ihm, die anderen gingen nach hause, jeder zu feinen Eltern. 9. Über mir in einem ber hohen Bäume faß ein fleiner Bogel und fang, bis es Abend 10. In dem ganzen großen Schlosse war es still, als er wurde. tam. Menschen und Tiere, der König und die Königin, die Pferde und die hunde lagen und schliefen; aber tot waren sie nicht, wie viele von den andern Leuten glaubten.

¹The inverted order is often used in conditional clauses instead of wenn with the transposed order.

1. Is this your book or his? It is mine. 2. Our house stands at the foot of a high mountain. 3. Once upon a time there was a woman who had two daughters, (the) one was very industrious and the other very lazy. 4. His horses are not so strong as these. 5. He took his old books and gave them to me. 6. One finds happy people among the rich and among the poor. 7. One of her sisters sings as well as she. 8. Did he sit at your table? No, he sat at hers. 9. Mr. and Mrs. Smith are both dead. 10. As they were very still, ' thought (believed) that they were working.

Lesson 13

PRONOMINAL WORDS WITH STRONG OR WEAK INFLECTION

The principle of double inflection with strong and weak endings does *not* apply to the pronominal words below. Those on the left are never preceded by an article or a similar pronominal word, those on the right always. The former, therefore, are always strong, the latter always weak.

STRONG ONLY

teiner, -e, -es none, nobody aller, -e, -es all einiger, -e, -es ¹ some mehrerer, -e, es ¹ several

ć

¹Rare in the sing., except in the nom. or acc. neut.: einiges = some things and mehreres = several things

WEAK ONLY

berfelbe, diefelbe, dasfelbe¹ the same

berjenige, diejenige, dasjenige¹ that (one) ; he, she, it

- der, die, das meinige ² mine der, die, das deinige yours
- ber, die, das seinige his
- der, die, das ihrige hers

der, die, das feinige its

- ber, die, das unsrige ours
- der, die, das eurige yours
- der, die, das ihrige theirs
- der, die, das Ihrige yours

¹The article, though joined, is inflected throughout, e. g. gen. sing. besjelben, berjelben, besjelben. — Derjenige is used chiefly before relatives, e. g. biejenigen, welche those who or which. ²These forms of the possessives are more common than the other weak forms in L. 12. II.

تا مشت و چر م

We have now had three sets of equivalents for the possessives mine, thine or yours etc.: (1) meiner, -e, -es etc.; (2) ber, bie, bas meine etc.; (3) ber, bie, bas meinige etc. But German has a fourth set of equivalents, namely the uninflected stem-forms

> mein *mine* **bein yours**

unser ours euer yours 58

| sein his | ihr theirs |
|----------|------------|
| ihr hers | 3hr yours |
| fein its | |

These last are used as predicate adjectives and denote possession pure and simple; thus, das Buch ift mein means simply the book is mine, or my property, or it belongs to me, whereas das Buch ift meines or das meine or das meinige means more particularly the book is MY BOOK, or it is THE ONE that belongs to me.

1. Ich gab ihm das Geld gestern, und jest sind haus und Gar= ten mein. 2. Keiner von allen seinen Knaben ist so fleißig wie Ihrer or der Ihrige (less often der Ihre). 3. Ift das nicht der= felbe Herr, mit dem Sie am Sonntag zur Kirche gingen? Ja, es ist derselbe, er ist ein lieber alter Freund meines Baters, der von Beit zu Beit zu uns kommt und einige Tage bei uns bleibt. 4. Diejenigen Menschen, welche kein Geld haben, sind nicht jo arm, wie diejenigen, welche keine Freunde haben. 5. Dieje Upfel find alle von demfelben Baume, aber einige sind schlecht und andere find gut. 6. Wessen Garten ist das? ist es Ihrer or der Ihrige (less often der Ihre)? - Welcher? der auf diefer Seite des Fluf= fes ?— Nein, der auf der andern. — Das ist Frau Schmidts Gar= ten. Unfrer or der unfrige (less often der unfre) liegt auf diefer Seite. 7. Die alte Frau bat mich um¹ Gelb. — Und gaben Sie ihr etwas? - Nein, ich hatte keines or (contracted) keins bei mir. 8. Was mein ist, das ist auch dein, denn wir sind Brüder. 9. Wir fanden mehrere Stühle in dem Zimmer. 10. 3ch gab ihm alles was² ich hatte.

¹ For. - ² This is the regular expression for all that.

1. Which dog do you mean, ours or theirs? — I mean that one (use ber) there. Isn't that yours? — Yes, that is ours. 2. Why do you ask him for money? He has none. 3. It is the same book that lay on the table when I came into the room. 4. These apples are not so poor as those (ber= 'rnige) which you gave us this morning. 5. Nobody came. 6. Some were playing, others were working. 7. She stayed several days with you. 8. Charles rode in her carriage, Mary in mine. 9. They live in the same house in which I live.

Lesson 14

ADJECTIVE INFLECTION: EXCEPTIONS

There are two exceptions to the Principle of Adjective Inflection as stated in L. 11. II:

1. Adjectives before a genitive singular in \$ of masculine or neuter nouns, not preceded by a pronominal word with strong ending, have the weak ending en more often than the strong ending e\$; see below, sentences 5 and 6.

2. After the nominatives and accusatives plural andere, einige, mehrere, viele and wenige, adjectives usually take the strong ending e instead of the weak ending en; see below, sentences 2. 3. 4. 6 and 7.

VOCABULARY

| der Mo'nat | die Mo'nate month | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|--|--|--|
| der Wein | die Weine wine | | | |
| bas Stück | die Stücke piece | | | |
| das Glas | die Gläser glass | | | |
| die Zeit | die Zeiten time | | | |
| (der) April April | | | | |

berühmt famous

schwach weak, feeble

1. Ich trank zwei Glas Waffer.¹ 2. Im Monat April² hatten wir oft schon mehrere warme Tage. 3. Zu (at) jener Zeit lebten in der kleinen Stadt Weimar² mehrere berühmte Männer. 4. In dem ganzen Dorse fanden wir nur einige alte schwache Männer oder Frauen und viele kleine Kinder, die vor den Türen auf der Straße spielten; alle anderen arbeiteten auf den Feldern. 5. Warum trinkt sie nicht alle Tage (= jeden Tag) ein Glas guten Weines,¹ wenn sie so krank und schwach ist? Weil sie keinen hat. 6. Aus dem einen Fenster meines Zimmers sah ich einige kleine Häusfer armer Leute, aus dem andern mehrere hohe Berge und ein Stück grünen Waldes.¹ 7. Aber es gibt noch andere schöne Kirchen in unstrer Stadt, als diejenige, die er Ihnen zeigte. 8. Schlechte Zeiten, meint (= glaubt) er, sind diejenigen Zeiten, in welchen die einen zu viel Gelb haben und die andern zu wenig.

¹ Masculine and neuter nouns denoting measure, weight, quantity etc. stand in the singular after numerals, and unless the noun denoting the substance measured or weighed is preceded by an adjective, as in sentences 5 and 6, it is used without inflection and without anything to correspond to of, hence not give Glas "bon" Baffer.—² Names of cities, kingdoms, provinces etc., and also of the months, follow the general designation (here Stabt) directly and without inflection.

1. I asked him for (um) a glass of water, and when he gave it to me, I drank it. 2. Yesterday I bought a piece of land of (von) your father. 3. We saw only several feeble old men in front of the houses. 4. I have some very lazy boys in my school, but also many diligent ones. 5. There are no good wines in that cold country. 6. She came on (an) a Sunday, but before the month of April. 7. The times were bad and none of us had [any] money. 8. It is a country, he said, which has but few famous men.

Lesson 15

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. SUBSTANTIVE ADJECTIVES

Ι

Comparatives are formed by adding er, and superlatives by adding it to the stem of the positive.

Adjectives in e drop this e before the er of the comparative, e.g. weise wise, weiser wiser. — Adjectives in el, en or er often drop the e of these syllables before the er of the comparative, e.g. bunkel dark, bunk= ler darker.

Adjectives in \mathfrak{F} , \mathfrak{H} , \mathfrak{H} , \mathfrak{H} , \mathfrak{H} or t usually insert e before the ft of the superlative, e.g. heiß hot, heißeft-* hottest.

*The hyphen indicates that the superlative forms are not used without endings. See note 2 below. Umlaut in Comparison. The following monosyllabic adjectives modify the vowel in the comparative and superlative:

| alt | älter | ältest- | old |
|---------|-----------|-------------|--------------|
| arm | ärmer | ärmít– | poor |
| jung | jünger | jüngst- | young |
| falt | fälter | fältest- | cold |
| flug | flüger | flügft— | clever, wise |
| frank | fränfer | fränkst- | sick, ill |
| furz | fürzer | kürzest— | short |
| lang | länger | längst– | long |
| schwarz | schwärzer | schwärzest— | black |
| stark | ftärfer | ftärfft- | strong |
| warm | wärmer | wärmst- | warm |

See also next paragraph.

Irregular Comparison. The following adjectives are irregular in their comparison:

| groß | größer | größt— | great, tall |
|------|--------|---------|-------------|
| gut | beffer | best- | good |
| hoch | höher | höchít— | high |
| nah | näher | nächít– | near |
| viel | mehr | meist- | much |

Inflection. Comparatives and superlatives take the same endings as positives.

Models: größere Freude (fem. Class IV) greater joy, der ältere Mann the older man, mein bestes Buch my best book.

STRONG

WEAK

| größe re | Freude | ber | älter e | Mann |
|------------------|--|--|---|---|
| größer er | Freude | des | älter en | Mannes |
| größer er | Freude | bem | älter en | Manne |
| größer e | Freude | den | älter en | Mann |
| größer e | Freuden | die | älter en | Männer |
| größer er | Freuden | der | älter en | Männer |
| größeren | Freuden | ben | älter en | Männern |
| größer e | Freuden | bie | älter en | Männer |
| | größer er größer er größer e größer e größer er größer en | größere Freude größerer Freude größerer Freude größere Freude größere Freuden größerer Freuden größeren Freuden größeren Freuden größere Freuden | größerer Freude des größerer Freude dem größere Freude den größere Freuden die größerer Freuden der größeren Freuden der | größerer Freude des älteren größerer Freude dem älteren größere Freude den älteren größere Freuden die älteren größerer Freuden der älteren größeren Freuden der älteren größeren Freuden den älteren |

| STRONG | | | WEAK | | |
|--------|-------------------|------|--------|----------------|---------|
| N. | mein bestes | Buch | | | |
| G. | ≊→ | | meines | best en | Buches |
| D. | ≝→ | | meinem | besten | Buche |
| A. | mein bestes | Buch | | | |
| N. | | | meine | besten | Bücher |
| G. | ⊪→ | | meiner | besten | Bücher |
| D. | ≝→ | | meinen | best en | Büchern |
| A. | ≌-> | | meine | best en | Bücher |

1. Karl ist ber kleinste, aber auch der fleißigste Knade in der ganzen Schule. 2. Meine Schwester ist zwei Jahre älter und mein Bruder ein Jahr jünger als ich. 3. Welcher von diesen beiden Bäumen ist der höhere? Dieser hier, er ist der allerhöchste¹ in un= sern Garten, aber nicht der allerschönste.¹ 4. Haben Sie kein heigeres Wasser, Fräulein Marie? Nein, heißeres als dieses habe ich jett nicht. 5. Im Sommer sind die Tage am längsten (not "längst"),² und im Winter am kürzesten (not "kürzest").² 6. In der Stadt Paris' gibt es längere und schönere Straßen, als in den meisten anderen größen Städten. 7. Kinder machen (cause) ihren Eltern keine größere Freude, als wenn sie fleißig und gut sind. 8. Die reichsten Leute sind nicht immer die glücklichsten, die größten sind nicht immer die stärksten, und die ältesten sind nicht immer die weisesten. 9. Oben, in dem Zimmer über beinem schlief ich am besten,² weil es da am stüllsten² war.

¹The gen. plur. aller is often used to strengthen superlatives : highest of all ... handsomest of all. —²Stem-forms of the superlative (as given in the lists above) occur only now and then as adverbs, e.g. jüngft (very) recently, längft (very) long ago. Where English uses superlatives as predicate adjectives, e.g. the days are longest (without article)..., or adverbially, e.g. I slept best..., German always uses the dative of the superlative after am (= an bem), e.g. am längften, am beften etc., meaning literally at the longest, at the best etc.

1. The highest trees are not always the handsomest. 2. Mary is more diligent than Charles, I think. 3. There is no richer man in our town than Mr. Smith. 4. I saw many handsome girls at your house, but Miss Mary was the handsomest of all. 5. I work best when everything is quiet. 6. His youngest son fell in the war. 7. In the month of August (August') the days are hottest. 8. Which of these two boys is the taller?

Π

In German, as in English, adjectives may be used substantively and thus denote persons or things which possess the quality expressed by the adjective. In German, such an adjective is written with a capital, like a noun, but inflected like an adjective standing before a noun. It then denotes, in the singular of the masculine and feminine, a person possessing the quality; in the singular of the neuter, a thing which, or that in general which possesses the quality; in the plural, persons (never things) possessing the quality.

EXAMPLES

STRONG

ein Alter an old man höre, Alte listen, old woman Altes und Neues old things and new

- ich höre nur Gutes von ihm I hear only good things about him
- ich finde viel Gutes, Schönes und Bahres darin I find much in it that is good, beautiful and true
- "guter Alter !" fagte er "good old man !" he said
- ein Deutscher a German (man)
- das find alte Deutsche those are old Germans (men or women or both)
- er ist tein Deutscher he is no German
- viele Rranke (L. 14) starben many (sick persons) patients died

der Alte the old man

da ist die Alte there's the old woman

WEAK

- bas Alte und bas Neue the old and the new (things)
- er nahm alles Gute he took everything that was good
- er jucht das Gute, das Schöne und das Wahre he seeks the good, the beautiful and the true or whatever is good etc.

"ber gute Alte !" fagte er "the good old man !" he said

- ber Deutsche the German (man), die Deutsche the German (woman)
- das find die alten Deutschen those are the old Germans (men or women or both)
- fie ist teine Deutsche she is no German
- feine Kranken starben alle his patients all died

Lesson 16

NUMERALS

The Cardinals, or the fundamental words denoting number, are as follows:

| 1 | eins | 15 | fünfzehn | 60 | jechzig |
|----|----------|-----------|----------------|--------------|-------------------|
| 2 | zwei | 16 | fechzehn | 70 | fiebzig |
| 3 | drei | 17 | fiebzehn | 80 | achtzig |
| 4 | vier | 18 | achtzehn | 90 | neunzig |
| 5 | fünf | 19 | neunzehn | 100 | hundert |
| 6 | fech8 | 20 | zwanzig | 149 | hundert neun= |
| 7 | fieben | 21 | einundzwanzig | | undvierzig |
| 8 | acht | 22 | zweiundzwanzig | j 200 | zweihundert |
| 9 | neun | 23 | dreiundzwanzig | 1000 | tausend |
| 10 | zehn | 30 | dreißig | 1133 | tausend einhun= |
| 11 | elf | 31 | einunddreißig | | dert dreiunddrei= |
| 12 | zwölf | 32 | zweiunddreißig | | ßig or elfhun= |
| 13 | dreizehn | 40 | vierzig | | dert dreiunddrei= |
| 14 | vierzehn | 50 | fünfzig | | ßig |
| | 100000 | hundertta | rusend | 1000000 eine | Million' |

Eins is used when no other numeral follows, as in counting: eins, zwei, brei etc., hundert und eins etc., also in expressions of time, as es ift eins it is one o'clock, es ift halb eins (lit. half one) it is half past twelve. Otherwise ein is used, as in einundzwanzig above, and in forming ordinals, as der einundzwanzigite etc.

For the inflection of einer, -e, -es, and ber, die das eine see L. 12. II.

The other cardinals are usually uninflected, but the genitives zweier and breier, and the datives zweien and breien are used when the case would not otherwise be obvious.

The Ordinals are adjectives resembling superlatives in their formation, and are inflected like them, with strong and weak endings. As preceded by the definite article, they are:

| der erste the first | der zwanzigste the 20th |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| der zweite the second | der einundzwanzigste the 21st |
| ber britte the third | der zweiundzwanzigste the 22d |
| der vierte the fourth | der dreiundzwanzigste the 23d |
| der fünfte the fifth | der dreißigste the 30th |
| der sechste the sixth | der vierzigste the 40th |

ber fiebente the seventh ber achte (one t) the eighth ber neunte the ninth etc., with te up to twentieth, after that with fie

EXAMPLES:

STRONG

erstes Buch first book

- als vierter und jüngster Sohn hatte er nur wenig Land being the fourth and youngest son he had but little land
- fiebenter Vers, zweites Wort seventh verse, second word

der hundertste the 100th der tausendste the 1000th

WEAK

bas erste Buch the first book ber vierte Sohn starb uach dem sünsten the fourth son died after the fifth

im fiebenten Bers, das zweite Wort in the seventh verse, the second word

Lesson 17

VERBS: PRINCIPAL PARTS

The German verb has two voices, the active and the passive; four modes, the indicative, subjunctive, imperative and conditional; one verbal noun, the infinitive; and two verbal adjectives, the present participle and the past participle.

The Simple Forms, all grouped under the active voice, are

- 1. the present indicative
- 2. the present subjunctive
- 3. the past indicative
- 4. the past subjunctive
- 5. the imperative
- 6. the present infinitive
- 7. the present participle
- 8. the past participle

All other forms are **Compound Forms**, or verb-phrases, and are made with the auxiliaries haben have, fein be and werden become.

The Stem of a verb is found by dropping from the present infinitive the final en or n.

The Principal Parts of a verb, from which all the other parts or forms can be inferred or derived, are 1. the present infinitive; 2. the first person singular of the past indicative; 3. the past participle.

Weak and Strong Verbs. Verbs are divided, with reference to their inflection, into weak and strong verbs.

In the weak verbs, the first person singular of the past in dicative adds te or ete to the stem, and the past participaadds t or et.

In the strong verbs, the first person singular of the past indicative changes the stem-vowel, but takes no ending, and the past participle adds en.

In both weak and strong verbs, the past participle has the prefix ge.

Examples (principal parts):

| weak | { lob–en | lob—te | ge—lob —t | praise praised praised |
|--------|------------|---------|------------------|------------------------|
| | { red–en | red—ete | ge—red—et | talk talked talked |
| strong | { feh-en | fah | ge—feh—en | see saw seen |
| | { fecht-en | focht | ge—focht—en | fight fought fought |
| | fing-en | fang | ge—fung—en | sing sang sung |

Below are given the principal parts of all the verbs that have occurred thus far. Those with ift before the past participle take the auxiliary fein be, instead of haben have, in certain compound forms, and their principal parts should be learned with ift.— The first three, being the common auxiliaries, are not grouped as either weak or strong, though haben belongs with the former, and fein and werben with the latter.

| haben | hatte | | gehabt | have |
|--------|---------------|-----|----------|--------|
| fein | war | iſt | gewesen | be |
| werden | wurde or ward | iſt | geworden | become |

WEAK VERBS

| fragen | fragte | gefragt | ask, inquire |
|---------|---------|----------|--------------------------------|
| führen | führte | geführt | lead, guide |
| glauben | glaubte | geglaubt | belie ve, th ink |

62

| hören | hörte | | gehört | hea r |
|-----------|--------------|------|-------------|------------------------------|
| faufen | faufte | | gekauft | buy |
| leben | lebte | | gelebt | live |
| legen | legte | | gelegt | lay |
| machen | machte | | gemacht | make, do |
| meinen | meinte | | gemeint | mean, think |
| fagen | fagte | | gefagt | say, tell |
| fetzen | fetzte | | geset | set, put, place |
| spielen | fpielte [| | gespielt | play |
| fuchen | fuchte | | gesucht | seek, look for |
| wohnen | wohnte | | gewohnt | dwell, live |
| zeigen | zeigte | | gezeigt | show, point out |
| antworten | antwortete | | geantwortet | answer, reply |
| arbeiten | arbeitete | | gearbeitet | work |
| warten | wartete | | gewartet | wait |
| | STI | RONG | J VERBS | |
| fahren | fuhr | iĩt | gefahren | drive |
| tragen | trug | 1 | getragen | carry, wear |
| fallen | fiel * | iſt | gefallen | fall |
| schlafen | fchlief | • | geschlafen | sleep |
| laufen | lief | iſt | gelaufen | run |
| gehen | ging # | ift | gegangen * | go, walk |
| nehmen | nahm | | genommen * | take |
| fprechen | (prach | | gesprochen | speak |
| sterben | ftarb | iĵt | gestorben | die |
| geben | gab | | gegeben | give |
| ftehen | stand * | | gestanden * | stand |
| liegen | lag | | gelegen | lis |
| bitten | bat | | gebeten * | beg, ask |
| fizen | faβ * | | gesessen * | sit |
| reiten | ritt * | | geritten * | ri de |
| bleiben | blieb | iſt | geblieben | s tay, remai n |
| schreiben | schrieb | | geschrieben | write |
| kommen | fam * | ift | gekommen | come |
| finden | fand | | gefunden | find |
| fingen | fang | | gesungen | sing |
| trinken | trank | | getrunken | drink |

٠

* Notice the change (from the infinitive) of the final consonant of the stem.

.

Lesson 18

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE. IRREGULAR OR MIXED NOUNS

Ι

Saben and all other transitive verbs, as also certain intran sitives, form the perfect and pluperfect indicative with haben. Scin, however, and many other intransitives, most of which signify a change of condition, as worden, or motion, as gehen and fommen, form those tenses with fein — these are the verbs whose principal parts are given with ift before the past participle (L. 17).

PERFECT INDICATIVE

| I have | had | I have been or become | | |
|---|----------|--|--------------------------|--|
| ich habe bu haft er hat wir haben ihr habt fie haben | } gehabt | ich bin du bift er ift wir find ihr feid fie find | } gewesen or geworden | |

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE

| I had h | ad | I had been or become | | | |
|---|----------|--|---------------------|--|--|
| ich hatte bu hattest er hatte wir hatten ihr hattet fie hatten | } gehabt | ich war bu warft er war wir waren ihr waret fie waren | gewesen or geworden | | |

VOCABULARY

| das Schiff | | die | Schiffe ship |
|------------|--------|-----|------------------------|
| der Graf | | die | Grafen count |
| die Stunde | 2 | die | Stunden hour |
| die Woche | | die | Woche n week |
| schlagen | schlug | ge | ichlagen <i>strike</i> |

| früh <i>early</i> | faum scarcely, hardly |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| fpät <i>late</i> | nachdem, conj., after |

Observe the position of the participles in the sentences below.

1. Ich bin oft bei ihm gewesen und habe oft mit ihm gesprochen, aber er hat mir nie etwas davon gesagt. 2. Heute bin ich eine ganze Stunde früher gekommen als gestern, weil wir keine Schule gehabt haben. 3. Der Alte hatte nie ein Schiff geschen, denn er hatte immer auf dem Lande gewohnt. 4. Kaum waren wir an den Fluß gekommen, so 1 sahen wir auf der andern Seite desselben das Schloß des Grasen, wie uns dein Bruder gesagt hatte. 5. Von dem Schiffe bis zu² eurem Hause sind wir zu Juß gegangen. 6. Mein lieber Freund ist heute sehr krank geworden. 7. Sie hat ihnen einige schöne Üpfel aus unserm Garten gegeben. 8. Nachdem es elf Uhr geschlagen hatte, war es zu spät. 9. Wer hat heute Abend gesungen? Fräulein Marie und ihre jüngste Schwester haben gesungen. 10. Eines Tages³ im Monat April war der Graf in der Stadt gewesen und hatte sich ein neues Pferd gekanft, denn sein altes war vor mehreren Wochen gestorben.

¹ When we saw. —² as far as or up to. —⁸ adverbial genitive: one day.

The rules for the position of the verb given in Lesson 3 apply to the inflected or personal forms only. The uninflected or non-personal forms — infinitive and past participle — stand last in independent sentences of both the normal and inverted orders, and (see sentences 2. 4. 8 above) next to the last in dependent clauses of the transposed order.

1. These little children have always lived in the city and have never seen a green forest. 2. He has grown old. 3. Who has struck my dog? 4. Scarcely had the clock struck three when (jo) the count came with his eldest son. 5. After he had been here an hour (an hour here), it was too late. 6. This week I have not seen them. 7. Why have you come so early? 8. The enemy has taken two of (von) our ships. 9. We did not tell them to whom we had given the old books.

Π

Irregular or Mixed Nouns. The nouns below form the singular after Classes I-III, the plural after Class IV:

| NOM | I. SING. | GEN | N. SING. | NON | I. PLUR. | |
|-----|------------|----------------|------------------|-------|----------------------|------------------------|
| der | Bauer | des | Bauers | die | Bauer n | farmer |
| der | Nachbar | des | Nachbar s | die | Nachbar n | neighbor |
| der | Staat | des | Staates | die | Staat en | state |
| das | Auge | des | Auges | die | Augen | eye |
| das | Ohr | des | Dhres | die | Ohren | ear |
| das | Bett | des | Bettes | die | Bett en | bed |
| das | Ende | des | Endes | die | Enden | end |
| der | Doktor | des | Dol'tor s | die | Dokto'ren | doctor |
| der | Profession | e des | Profes' fors | die | Professo'r en | professor |
| Exa | MPLES: | | | | | |
| N. | der S | taat | das | Auge | ber | Dol tor |
| G. | des S | taat e3 | des | Auges | des | Dof tors |
| D. | dem S | taate | dem | Auge | ben | 1 Dol ^e tor |
| | | | | - | | |

| | | U | ***** | ******* | ••••• | ~~~~~ |
|----|-----|-----------------|-------|---------|-------|------------|
| A. | den | Staat. | das | Auge | den | Dof tor |
| N. | die | Staat en | die | Augen | die | Dokto' ren |
| G. | der | Staat en | der | Augen | der | Dokto' ren |
| D. | den | Staat en | den | Augen | den | Dokto' ren |
| А. | die | Staat en | die | Augen | die | Dokto' ren |
| | | | | | | |

Bauer and Nachbar also form a singular after Class IV: bes, bem, ben Bauern or Nachbarn.

Das Herz heart is inflected as follows: des Herzens, dem Herzen, das Herz; plur. die, der, den, die Herzen.

1. Es war einmal ein reicher alter Bauer, der hatte viele Feinde unter seinen Nachbarn. 2. Segen Ende¹ desselben Jahres war ein zweiter Doktor aus dem Staate Illinois² in die kleine Stadt gefommen. 3. Solch faule Anaben! sie hatten dis elf Uhr im¹ Bett gelegen! 4. Als junger¹ Mann sch ich sehr gut, aber jest bin ich alt, und meine Augen sind schwach geworden. 5. Man wird nicht alt, solange das Herz jung bleibt. 6. Das sind die Töchter des "Professors Schmidt⁸ or das sind Professor Schmidt⁸ Töchter. 7. Herrn Schmidts⁸ Mutter ist gestern gestorben. Ich meine Herrn Doktor³ Schmidts Mutter.

¹ In a number of phrases where English requires the article, German omits it, and vice versa. -2 See L. 14. n.². -8 A name after a title with preceding article is left unvaried. A name after a title without preceding article is inflected, and the title, except Serr, is then left unvaried. Of two titles the second is regularly left unvaried.

1. Have Dr. Smith's daughters come? No, not yet. 2. Our neighbors, who are all farmers, have very fine horses. 3. Where does (Mr.) Professor Smith live? At (an) the end of this street, but on the other side. 4. It is true, he had grown old, but his heart had remained young. 5. On (an) the next morning, they found him dead in his (the) bed. 6. Mr. Smith's brother has bought one of the houses (the one house), and we have bought the other.

Lesson 19

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE. IRREGULAR WEAK VERBS

I

The future indicative of all verbs is formed with werden, as shown below.

FUTURE INDICATIVE

I shall have or be or become or say or come etc.

ich werde bu wirst er wird wir werden ihr werden sie werden fie werden

For the position of the infinitive see L. 18. L

VOCABULARY der Prinz die Prinzen *prince* Amerika *America* Henry

| deutsch German | | nun now | | |
|------------------------|----------|---------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| niemand nobody | | neulich recently, the other day | | |
| ganz, adv., quite, all | | fondern but | | |
| wohl, adj., well | | vielleicht perhaps | | |
| reifen | reiste | iſt | gereift | travel, go |
| fchicten | schickte | | geschickt | send |
| wünschen | wünschte | | gewünscht | wish |

1. Brinz Heinrich, der Bruder des deutschen Raisers, wird vielleicht auf (for) einige Wochen nach Amerika kommen. 2. Ich frage, ob Sie heute nach der Stadt, or zur Stadt, fahren werden. - Sch werde heute nicht fahren, sondern 1 reiten. 3. Herr Projej= for Schmidt wünscht, ein neues haus zu taufen,2 aber tein so großes wie unfres. 3ch habe ihn gebeten, mit Ihnen zu sprechen,2 ba bas Ihrige etwas fleiner ist als unfres. 4. Wann werden Sie mir die Bücher schicken, Herr Doktor, von denen Sie neulich spra= chen? Morgen, Fräulein Schmidt. 5. 3ch bin nicht ganz wohl acwesen und habe mehrere Tage im Bett, or zu Bett, gelegen. 6. Mein jüngster Bruder ist vor einer Woche nach London gereist und wird bis zum Winter dort bleiben. 7. Nun kamen wir auch an das kleine haus, aber ess waren keine Leute darin. Auch im Garten fanden wir niemand. Endlich aber, nachdem wir eine ganze Stunde gewartet hatten, tam der alte Bauer und feste fich neben uns unter den großen Baum vor dem hause.

¹ After may follow a positive or a negative statement, fondern follows negative statements only and introduces a substitute statement; after = but yet, fondern = but on the contrary. $-^2$ The infinitive in infinitive clauses stands last. $-^3$ there were . . .; e3, in a construction like this, is called the anticipatory or grammatical subject, and anticipates the true or logical subject, here Seute, with which the verb must always agree in number.

1. I wish to buy a German book. 2. Has not Mr. Smith's sister recently gone (use rcifen) to London? No, but she will go to-morrow. 3. Everybody asked me: "Have you seen Prince Henry?" 4. Perhaps he is not yet quite well. 5. Shall you ask (bitten) the gentleman to send the books? ' have already asked him. 6. You will find nobody at home. 7. Now we have a carriage, but where shall we find a horse? Our neighbors have one. 8. He had not come on foot, but on horseback.

Π

Irregular Weak Verbs. The following verbs, though in dected like weak verbs, undergo a change of stem-vowel in the past indicative and past participle. The last two also change the final consonants of the stem (as their equivalents do in English):

| brennen | brannte | | gebrannt | burn, be on fire |
|----------------|----------------|-----|----------|------------------|
| fennen | fannte | | gefannt | know |
| nenne n | nannte | | genannt | name, call |
| rennen | rannte | iſt | gerannt | run |
| fenden | sa ndte | | gesandt | send |
| wenden | wandte | | gewandt | turn |
| bringen | brachte | | gebracht | bring |
| denken | dachte | | gedacht | think |

VOCABULARY

| der Diener | die Diener servant |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| das Feuer | die Feuer <i>fire</i> |
| das Bild | die Bilder picture |
| der Soldat' | die Solba't en soldier |
| rufen rief | gerufen call, shout |
| allein alone | eben just, just now |
| schnell quick, fast | wieder again |

1. Kennen Sie den alten Mann dort, welcher Ihrer Mutter eben einen Brief brachte? D ja, den kenne¹ ich schon lange. Er ist früher Soldat² gewesen und ist jetzt Diener² bei dem jungen Grafen auf (*in*) dem Schlosse. Wir Kinder nannten ihn schon vor zwanzig Jahren den alten Heinrich oder nur den Alten. 2. Kommen sie³ morgen wieder, so werde ich sie bitten, sich an Sie zu wenden.⁴ Als sie gestern hier waren, dachte ich nicht daran.⁵ 3. Wir sandten Ihnen heute morgen durch unsern Diener die Bilber, die Sie zu sehen wünschen. 4. Es war elf Uhr abends.⁶ Ich war ganz allein zu Hause und hatte einige Stunden an meinem Tische geselsten und Briefe geschrieben. Da⁷ hörte ich mehrere Leute burch die Straßen rennen und Feuer! rusen. Schnell sah (looked) ich aus dem Fenster: in dem kleinen Dorfe auf der anderen Seite des Flusses brannte die Kirche. 5. Der König führte die Soldaten nicht selbst gegen den Feind, sondern der Prinz.

¹ L. 8. II. n.¹. — ² The indefinite article is omitted before a predicate noun denoting vocation, rank or profession, if the noun is without a modifier. — ⁸ L. 12. II. n. ¹. — ⁴ Literally: to turn themselves to you, i. e. to apply to you. — ⁵ of it. — ⁶ adv. in the evening, originally a genitive. — ⁷ Originally there, but more frequently, as here, then.

1. If he brings the books before six o'clock, I shall give him the money. 2. Do you know Professor Smith's brother? Yes, I know him very well (gut). 3. Shall you send him one of your pictures? I have sent him (already) one. 4. Then the old servant applied to his former master and asked him for (um) some money. 5. He ran against the tree and fell. 6. Now I am all alone again (again all alone) and am thinking of (an with acc.) the good old times that lie behind us. 7. I call that a light carriage. 8. There is a house on fire, don't you see it? 9. The king called a soldier to him (fith) and gave him the letter.

Lesson 20

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF CERTAIN STRONG VERBS

Ι

Strong verbs with a for a stem-vowel modify this a in the 2. and 3. persons singular of the present indicative, thus:

| ίđ | trage | I | carry, | wear | wir | tragen |
|----|--------|---|--------|------|-----|--------|
| du | trägít | | | | ihr | tragt |
| er | trägt | | | | fie | tragen |

The most important of these verbs are

STRONG VERBS

| | INFIN. | PAST IND. | PAST PART. | PRES. | IND. |
|--------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| | | | | 2. sing. | 3. sing. |
| catch | fangen | fing | gefangen | fängft | fängt |
| fall | fallen | fiel | ift gefallen | fällft | fällt |
| hold | halten | hielt | gehalten | hältft 1 | hält 1 |
| advise | raten | riet | geraten | rätft 1 | rät 1 |
| let | lassen | ließ | gelassen | läffeft * | läßt |
| sleep | schlafen | schlief | geschlafen | fchläfft | í chl ä ft |
| drive | fahren | fuhr | ist gefahren | fährst | fährt |
| strike | schlagen | schlug | geschlagen | jchlägjt | f chl ä gt |
| carry | tragen | trug | getragen | trägft | trägt |

With these may be classed

run laufen lief ift gelaufen läufft läuft ¹In the 2. sing. of these verbs no e is used to separate the ending ft from stems ending in t (hältft, not "hälteft"); and in the 3. sing., where two t's would come together, only one is written, as only one is pronounced (hält, not "hältt"). —² läffeft ordinarily becomes läft, see L. 2. 1. n.¹ on the inflection of fige.

1. Mein Bruder rät mir, mich an Professor Schmidt zu wenben. 2. Schläfft du immer hier oben ?— Nur im Winter. Im Sommer schlafe ich unten, weil es hier zu heiß ist. 3. Läuft er, so fällt er. 4. Wenn du die Feder so hältst, wie ich sie halte, so schweibst du nicht nur leichter, sondern auch besser. 5. Wann fährst bu zur Stadt? Gegen Ende der Woche. 6. Fängst du den Apscl, so ist er dein. 7. Ietzt lasse ich dich nicht länger schlafen, Karl, es ist hohe Zeit, daß du zur Schule gehst. 8. Ich werde die Knaben nicht allein reisen lassen, denn sie sind noch zu jung. 9. Womit er den armen Hund schlug, das sch ich nicht. 10. Gestern worgen war sie noch ganz wohl, aber gegen Abend wurde sie so frank, daß wir den Doktor kommen ließen.¹ 11. Sie läßt¹ ihre Tochter das Kleid machen. 12. Sie läßt ein Kleid machen.¹

¹Saffen often means let in the sense of cause to or have with an infinitive; thus in 10: we caused the doctor to come, i.e. we sent for..., and in 11: she is having her daughter make the dress. In 11, thre Tochter is at the same time the object of läßt and the (logical) subject of machen. When such object-subject is omitted, as in 12, the infinitive acquires passive meaning: she has or is having a dress made. 1. He always drives too fast. 2. What do you advise, Mary? I advise you to stay till they come. 3. How long he sleeps! 4. Shall you let the children go alone? No, I never let them go alone. 5. Why don't you run, Charles? It is (already) late. — I have time enough. 6. He had been in the woods and had caught several small birds. 7. She wears a green dress. 8. The boy saw the apple fall from the tree and he caught it. 9. She held some beautiful flowers in her hand.

Π

Strong verbs with short e for a stem-vowel change this e to i in the 2. and 3. persons singular of the present indicative. The most important are

| break | brechen | brach | gebrochen | brichst | bricht |
|------------------|-----------|------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|
| speak | sprechen | sprach | gesprochen | jprich st | spricht |
| help | helfen | half | geholfen | hilfst | hilft |
| meet | treffen | traf | getroffen | triffit | trifft |
| eat | essen | aß | gegessen | issest | ißt |
| \mathbf{W} ith | these may | be classed | l du wirft, er | wird. | |

| The | ${\bf following}$ | verbs with | long e cha | ange to ie: | |
|------------|-------------------|------------|------------|------------------|---------|
| read | lesen | las | gelesen | liesest | lieft |
| SEE | fehen | fah | gesehen | fichst | fieht |
| steal | stehlen | ftahl | gestohlen | ftie hlft | ſtiehlt |

The following three verbs change long e to i, and the last two double the final consonant of the stem:

| give take | geben nehmen | gab nahm | gegeben genommen | gibft * nimmft | gibt * nimmt |
|--|-----------------|-------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| step | treten | trat | ist getreten | trittst | tritt |
| • Pronounced both long and short, and until recently written giebft giebt. | | | | | |

VOCABULARY

| der Arm | die Arme arm |
|----------|-----------------------|
| das Bein | die Bein e leg |
| das Brot | die Brote bread |

72

ber Arme, nom. sing. masc., the poor man bie Arme, nom. sing. fem., the poor woman bie Armen, nom. plur., the poor (people)

 Fällst du vom Baum, so brichst du dir den Arm oder das Bein.¹ 2 Den Armen hilft man oft am besten, wenn man ihnen kein Gcld gibt, sondern etwas zu arbeiten. 3. Der eine Bruder, der ältere, sitt den ganzen Tag hinter den Büchern und liest. Der andere, der jüngere, ist sehr saul und spielt immer auf der Straße.
 Warum sprichst du so viel, siehst du nicht, daß ich jetzt lese?
 Man ist um² zu leben, aber man lebt nicht um² zu essen nehr zu essen hatte etwas Brot gestohlen, weil ihre Kinder nichts mehr zu essen sond sond gestohlen, weil ihre Kinder nichts mehr zu essen sond sond sond sond sond auf beutsch³: ich werde Ihnen helsen, aber nicht: ich werde "Sie" helsen, und: ich werde Ihnen helsen, aber nicht: ich werde "de" helsen,
 Sie nimmt die Feder und schreibt damit. 10. Da ist sie. Eben tritt sie aus dem Hause in den Garten.

¹Instead of beinen Arm oder dein Bein.—²um before an infinitive with ju means in order to.—³ in German.

1. If you help me to-day, I shall help you to-morrow. 2. He reads all [the] books that he finds, good and bad. 3. She is giving the poor children some bread. 4. Do you see him, Charles? He is just stepping into the room. 5. He is very weak, for he eats but little. 6. One often meets such people. 7. Perhaps he takes both pictures. 8. She never speaks of it. 9. Have you nothing to eat? Yes, I have some bread, and I also have some wine to drink.

Lesson 21

THE IMPERATIVE

Ι

Formation and Models. The imperative of both strong and weak verbs is regularly formed from the stem of the present, as shown below:

| 2. sing. | 2. plur. | 2. sing. or 2. plur. | |
|----------------|----------------|----------------------|-------------|
| fage | fag t | jag en Sie | say · |
| frage | fragt | frag en Sie | ask |
| warte | wartet | warten Sie | wait |
| bleib e | bleib t | bleib en Sie | stay |
| trage | trag t | trag en Sie | carry |
| trinke | trinkt | trinken Sie | drink |
| reit e | reit et | reit en Sie | ride |
| habe | hab t | hab en Sie | have |
| werde | werd et | werd en Sie | become, get |

Weak verbs sometimes drop the ending e of the 2. singular; strong verbs quite commonly.

The 2. singular (used to address one person with whom the speaker is intimate) and the 2. plural (used to address several such persons) are followed by their pronouns, bu or ihr, only when these are required for emphasis or contrast, e. g. frage bu (or fragt ihr) ihn, ich fenne ihn nicht (do) you ask him, I don't know him. — The Sie of the last form (used to address either one or more persons not familiar to the speaker) is never omitted.

VOCABULARY

| folgen folgte | ist gefolgt follow |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| böfe angry, wicked | bann then, and then, next |
| also hence, so, therefore | erst, adv., <i>first</i> |

Take the sentences below in the following order: $1 - 1^{a} - 1^{b}$, $2 - 2^{a} - 2^{b}$ etc.

| 1. Sage es beiner Schwester, bitte. | 1ª Sagt e8 eurer Schwefter, bitte. | 1 ^{b.} Sagen Sie e8 Jhrer Schwester, bit= te. |
|--|--|---|
| 2. Erft schreibe dei= nen Brief, dann geh zu deinem Freunde. | 2ª Erft fchreibt eure Briefe, dann geht zu eurem Freun= de. | 2 ^{b.} Erft fchreiben Sie Jhren Brief, dann gehen Sie zu Jhrem Freunde. |
| 3. Schlafe wohl, ¹ 2bes Kind. | 3ª. Schlaft wohl,1 Kinder. | 3 ^{6.} Schlafen Sie wohl. ¹ Herr Schmidt. |

4. Jch werde dich führen,² Karl; also fomm und folge mir. 4^{a.} Ich werde euch führen,² Karl und Marie ; also kommt und folgt mir.

5. Wenn er heute zu spät kommt, so werde, bitte, nicht böse, lieber Freund. 5ª. Wenn er heute zu spät kommt, so werdet, bitte, nicht böse, liebe Freunde. 4^{b.} Jch werde Sie führen,² Fräulein Marie; also kommen Sie und folgen Si. mir.

5^{b.} Wenn er heut, zu spät kommt, so werden Sie, bitte, nicht böse, meine Her= ren.

¹ Schlaf(e) wohl or gut, about the same as I hope you'll rest well. $-^2$ show you the way, escort.

1. Show me the way, please. 2. Don't stay too long. 3. Drink a little water. 4. Don't ride so fast. 5. Now sing again. 6. Lie still, poor dog. 7. Go and bring me your books. 8. Carry this picture home and show it to your brother. 9. Don't buy so much. 10. Answer, please.

Π

Special Forms of the Imperative. All strong verbs that change e to i or ie in the 2. and 3. singular of the present indicative (except merben, see I above) make the same change in the 2. singular of the imperative and omit the ending e:

| brich | brech t | brech en Sie | break |
|------------|-----------------|---------------------|-----------|
| fprich | sprech t | sprechen Sie | speak |
| hilf | helft | helfen Sie | help |
| triff | trefft | treffen Sie | meet |
| ŧβ | effet | essen Sie | eat |
| lies | lefet | les en Sie | read |
| sieh | feh t | feh en Sie | see, look |
| stiehl | stehl t | stehl en Sie | steal |
| gib | geb t | geb en Sie | give |
| nimm | nehm t | nehm en Sie | take |
| tritt | tret et | tret en Sie | step |
| The impera | tive of sein be | is: | |
| | fei seid | seien Sie be | |

VOCABULARY

| der Hut | die Hüte hat |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| das Wort | die Worte word, promise |
| danken dankte | gedankt thank |
| edel noble | wirflich real, really |
| schwarz black | doch but, yet, still |
| weiß white | ehe, conj., <i>before</i> |

1. Alle kannten ihn, doch keiner sprach mit ihm. 2. Sieh da, ist das nicht Onkel Heinrich, der da fährt? Nein, das ist er nicht, denn der trägt keinen weißen Hut, wie jener Herr, sondern einen schwarzen. 3. Tritt näher,¹ bitte, und iß erst ein wenig² oder trink ein Glas Wein, ehe du nach Haus gause gehst. Ich danke,⁸ lieber Freund, es ist wirklich schon zu spät, ich habe keine Zeit mehr. 4. Sprich doch,⁴ wenn du so viel zu sagen hast. 5. Komm, gib mir die Hand und sei wieder mein Freund. — Meinst du denn,⁵ daß ich dir böse⁶ gewesen bin? 6. Gott hilft denen, die sich selber (= selbst) helsen. 7. Kein edler Mensch bricht sein Wort. 8. Nehmen Sie Ihre Bücher und sehen Sie sich an jenen Tisch dort. 9. Welch schöne Blumen ihr mir gebracht habt! Ich danke euch sehr⁷ dasür.

¹ Literally step nearer, i. e. walk in. $-^{2}$ ein menig (regularly without ending after ein) a little. $-^{3}$ ich banke, or simply banke, commonly means I decline with thanks. $-^{4}$ boch with an imperative corresponds to do, hence do speak or why don't you speak? $-^{5}$ benn, if not beginning a clause, commonly means why, please, tell me, hence: why, do you think . . .? $-^{6}$ angry or vexed with you. $-^{7}$ very much.

1. "Help me!" he cried, "help me!" 2. Take this book and read it, and then give it to your sister. 3. Look, there stands the castle. 4. Sit still and don't talk (use reben or sprechen) so much. 5. Be diligent. 6. Thank him (dat.) for it. 7. Many saw him, yet¹ nobody knew him. 8. She wore a black dress, and I a white one. 9. Don't break your word. 10. Look for your hat, please.

¹ Doth sometimes causes inversion, and sometimes not. Use it without inversion here, as in sentence 1 of the German above.

Lesson 22

THE MODAL AUXILIARIES

Ι

Principal Parts of the Modal Auxiliaries:

.

,

| dürfen | durfte | gedurft | be allowed, be permitted, may |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| fönnen | fonnte | gekonnt | can, be able |
| mög en | moch te | gemocht | may, like to, care to |
| müssen | mußte | gemuß t | must, be obliged to, have to |
| jollen | follte | gesollt | shall, am to, ought to |
| woll en | woll te | gewoll t | will, intend to, be about to |

PRESENT INDICATIVE

| allor hav | am wed to, e per- sion to | I can, I am able to | I may, I like to, neg. I don't care to | I must, I have to, I can- not but | I am (told) to, I shall | I will, I am about to, I in- tend to |
|--------------------------------------|---|---|--|--|---|---|
| ich du er wir ihr fie | darf darfft darf dürfen dürft dürfen | fann fannft fann fönnen fönnt fönnen | mag magft mag mögen mögt mögen | muß mußt muß müßt müßt müßt | joll joll ft joll en joll en joll t | will willft will wollen wollt wollen |

PAST INDICATIVE

| allou had | was ved to, ! per- ion to | I could, I was able to | I liked to, I might, neg. I did not care to | I had to, I was obliged to, could not but | I was (told) to | I would, I was about to. I in- tended to |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|---|---|---|---|
| ich du er wir ihr fie | durfte durfteft durfte durften durften durftet durften | fonnte fonnteft fonnte fonnten fonntet fonnten | mochte mochteft mochte mochten mochtet mochtet | mußte mußteft mußte mußten mußtet mußtet | follte follteft follte follten folltet follten | wollte wollteft wollte wollten wolltet wollten |

Observe: (1) the singular of the present indicative of these verbs is inflected like the past indicative of strong verbs (no endings in the 1. and 3. pers.), though the past indicative follows the inflection of weak verbs; (2) in all but follen, the singular of the present has a different stem-vowel from that of the plural, which latter has the same vowel as the infinitive; (3) the past indicative and past participle have no umlaut even though the infinitive has it; (4) \mathfrak{gu} , like to in English, is omitted before an infinitive accompanying a modal auxiliary (see sentences 1, 2 etc., below).

1. Kannst du schon lesen und schreiben, Karl? Ich kann schon lesen, aber noch nicht schreiben. 2. Warum magst du nicht mehr lesen? Weil ich heute schon so viel gelesen habe. 3. Als ich ge= stern unsere Äpsel ins Haus bringen wollte, die unter dem Baume lagen, hatten unsere Nachbarn sie gestohlen. 4. Aber jetzt darsst¹¹ du kein Wasser mehr trinken, mein Kind, du hast schon genug ge= trunken. 5. Gut, wenn dein Bater sagt, daß du zu ihm kommen sollst, so geh. 6. Doktor Schmidt sagt, Sie müssen noch einige Tage im Bett bleiben. 7. Neulich sollte Heinrich seiner kleinen Schwester helsen, aber er wollte nicht. Dann aber kam der Bater, und Heinrich mußte ihr doch helsen. 8. Balb wurde es dunkle Nacht, und man konnte das Schiff nicht mehr sehen. 9. Rebet nicht so viel, Kinder, wenn ihr arbeiten sollt. 10. Das mag wohl wahr sein. 11. Darf ich¹ fragen, wo Sie wohnen?

¹ Dürfen with a negative (here tein) is often equivalent to must not. In a question it is usually may I etc., e. g. barf ich fragen, ob ... may I ask if ...

1. He had run so fast that he could not speak. 2. May (use bürfen) I ask where he lives now? I will tell (it) you, but nobody must (use bürfen) hear it. 3. We were obliged to go home. 4. You shall write the letter, do you hear what I say? 5. I don't care to travel in such (use fold), without ending) hot countries. 6. How shall I (or am I to) find him? First look for him in the garden. 7. She intends to go alone. 8. Who is to bring the books and pictures? Charles was to bring them, but as ¹ he is not here, you must bring them yourself.

1 Da with transposed order.

Compound Forms of the Modal Auxiliaries:

FUTURE INDICATIVE I shall be allowed to, be able to, etc. ich werbe bu wirft burfen, fönnen, etc. etc.

PERFECT INDICATIVE

I have been allowed to, been able to, etc. ich habe bu haft etc. etc.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE I had been allowed to, been able to ich hatte bu hatteft etc. geburft, gekonnt etc.

When the perfect or pluperfect is accompanied by the infinitive of another verb, the past participle of the modal auxiliary (geburft, gefonnt etc.) is changed to the infinitive (bürfen, fönnen etc.). Thus, ich habe nicht gehen bürfen where bürfen stands for geburft and where an infinitive, namely gehen, is actually expressed) means I have not been (or I was not) allowed to go; whereas ich habe nicht geburft (where an infinitive, gehen or other, is understood, but not expressed) corresponds to the colloquial English I have not been (or I was not) allowed to (where to also requires an infinitive to be understood).

1. Wenn Doktor Schmidt kommt und beine Augen sieht, so wirst bu zu Hause bleiben müssen. 2. Bis jest habe ich noch nicht an ihn schreiben können. 3. Werde ich den Kranken sehen dürfen? Das glaube ich kaum. 4. Wie oft habe ich zu dir kommen wollen! aber ich habe nie gedurst. 5. Karl kam alle Tage zu mir, es mochte heiß sein ober kalt. 6. Man sagt, daß der Kaiser den Gras fen nicht hat ¹ sprechen ² wollen; aber ich kann das nicht glauben. 7. In einem so alten Wagen wird niemand sahren mögen.

¹In a dependent clause introduced by a subordinating conjunction (as baß) and containing an infinitive used for a past participle (as wollen for gewollt), the personal part of the verb (as hat) stands before the non-personal verb-forms. See Lessons 3 and 18. I. — ² [prechen with an accusative denoting a person means speak with or see.

1. I have not been able to find it. 2. She will not be able to see her mother. 3. Will he be allowed to go? 4. He (has) intended to write the letter. 5. He says that he (has) intended to write the letter. 6. Nobody will care to buy so old a (a so old) horse. 7. Why were you (have you been) obliged to stay? 8. Let him go if he does not care to stay. 9. May I ask in what (wherein) I am to send you the books?

Lesson 23

Wiffen

Willen, wußte, gewußt know resembles, in its inflection, the modal auxiliaries:

| PRES. IND. | PAST IND. | IMPERATIVE |
|-------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| I know | I knew | know |
| ich weiß | ich wußte | 2. sing. wijje |
| du weißt | du wußteft | 2. plur. wisset |
| er weiß wir wiff en | er wuß te wir wuß ten | 2. sing. and 2. plur. miffen Sie |
| ihr wißt | ihr wußtet | |
| sie wissen | fie wußten | |
| FUT. IND. | PERF. IND. | PLUP. IND. |
| I shall know | I have known | I had known |
| ich werde wissen | ich habe gewußt | ich hatte gewußt |
| etc. | etc. | etc. |

Willen means to know facts, to know that something is thus or so, fennen (fannte, gefannt L. 19. 11) means to know things or persons, to be acquainted with.

Wiffen

VOCABULARY

| der Lehrer | | die Lehrer teacher | | |
|------------|--------|--------------------|------------------|--|
| der Schü | iler | die Schüler | scholar, student | |
| lehren | lehrte | gelehrt | teach | |
| lerten | lernte | gelernt | learn, study | |
| lieben | liebte | geliebt | love | |
| tun | tat | getan | do | |

gar, adv., very, fully (used especially to strengthen negatives)

| gar nicht not at all | gar nichts nothing at all | |
|--|-------------------------------------|--|
| jedermann everybody | gern gladly, willingly, with pleas- | |
| zusammen together | ure | |
| zwar to be sure, it is true | lieber, compar., more willingly, | |
| gewiß certain, sure | rather, better, preferably | |
| <i>x</i> , <i>x</i> , <i>n</i> , n | | |

am liebsten, superl., most willingly, best of all ich fahre gern I am fond of driving ich reite lieber I prefer to ride, I like riding better ich gehe am liebsten I like walking best of all

1. Unfer neuer Lehrer kennt schon alle Schüler in der ganzen Schule und weiß von jedem, ob er gern lernt oder nicht. 2. "Lehren Sie nicht auch lieber Knaden als Mädchen, Herr Doktor?" fragte ich ihn. "Gewiß," antwortete er mir, "aber am liebsten lehre ich beide zusammen." 3. Er nennt dich zwar seinen lieben Freund, aber du weißt gar wohl, daß er ein böser Mensch ist und dich gar nicht liebt. 4. Neulich waren sie noch reich, jetzt haben sie gar nichts. 5. Ich rate dir, Karl, habe nichts mit solchen Leuten zu tun. 6. Das kann jedermann sagen, aber niemand weiß, ob es wahr ist. 7. Marie, willst du nicht so gut sein und dies Stück Brot dem armen Knaden bringen, der unten vor der Tür steht? Gern, liebe Mutter. 8. Ich kannte Herrn Schmidt nicht und wußte auch nicht, wo er wohnte.

Everybody knew that he had been here, but nobody had seen him.
 "Who has done that?" the teacher asked.
 Will you drive with me? Thank you (simply Dante), I prefer to go on foot.
 I like reading best of all.
 For-

merly she was very diligent, now she does not study at all. 6. We went to (in) the same school and we often worked together. 7. How many students have you in your school, (Mr.) Doctor? We have now only seventy-five. 8. Certainly, I shall be glad to help you (shall gladly help you). 9. Everybody had to (use müffen) love him, for he loved everybody. 10. To-day we have nothing at all to do.

Lesson 24

COMPOUND VERBS WITH INSEPARABLE PREFIXES

Two Classes. There are two classes of compound verbs: those with inseparable prefixes and those with separable prefixes.

The Inseparable Prefixes are be, emp, ent, er, ge, bcr and ger. Verbs compounded with these have the accent on the stem and are inflected like simple verbs, except that the past participle omits the prefix ge.

Model: beschrei'ben describe.

| PRINCIPAL PARTS | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| beschrei | 'ben beschrieb' | beschrie ben | |
| PRES. IND. | PAST IND. | IMPERATIVE | |
| I describe | I described | describe | |
| ich beschreisbe | ich beschrieb' | 2. sing. beschrei'be | |
| du beschreibst | du beschriebst | 2. plur. beschreibt' | |
| er beschreibt' | er beschrieb' | 2. sing. and beschrei'ben | |
| wir beschrei'b en | wir beschrie'b en | 2. plur. 🖌 Sie | |
| ihr beschreibt' | ihr beschriebt' | - | |
| sie beschreisb en | fie beschrie'ben | | |
| FUT. IND. | PERF. IND. | PLUP. IND. | |
| I shall describe | I have describ | ed I had described | |
| ich werde beschrei'ben | ich habe beschrie' | ben ich hatte beschrie'ben | |
| etc. | etc. | etc. | |

82

VOCABULARY

| die (| Seschichte | die Geschichte n | story, history |
|---------------|-------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| jemand son | nebody | einander ea | ch other, one another |
| befu'chen | besudy'te | befucht' | visit, call on |
| verfu'chen | versudy'te | verfucht' | try, attempt |
| erlau'ben | erlaub'te | erlaubt' | allow, permit |
| erzäh'len | erzähl'te | erzählt' | tell, relate |
| empfan'gen . | empfing' | empfan'gen | receive |
| gefche'hen | geschab' | ift gefche'hen | happen |
| vergef'fen | vergaß' | vergef'fen | forget |
| verlie'ren | verlor' | verlo'ren | lose |
| verfipre'chen | versudy' | verfpro'chen | promise |

1. Sie werden mich also morgen besuchen, nicht wahr¹? Gern, wenn Sie es erlauben. 2. Wir saßen unter dem alten Baum vor der Tür und erzählten einander allerlei Geschichten. 3. Kannst du mir den Mann beschreiben, der heute hier war? — Wie soll ich ihn dir beschreiben? Ich habe gar nicht gehört, daß jemand hier war. 4. Deine lieben Eltern empfingen uns mit großer Freude. 5. Er= zähle mir schnell, was geschehen ist. 6. Gewiß, er versprach es zu tun, und er versuchte es auch, aber es war schon zu spät. 7. Ob sie das Buch vergessen oder auf dem Wege nach Hause verloren hatte, das wußte sie nicht. 8. Da geschah es eines Tages, daß die Eltern nicht zu Hause waren und die Königstochter² allein durch alle Zimmer des großen Schlosses ging.

¹ Literally, not true? i. e. won't you? — ² the king's daughter or princess. Compound nouns, as a rule, have the gender and inflection of the final member.

 The little boy tried to tell¹ me the story, but he had forgotten it. 2. Now it happened that nobody was at home when I came. 3. I shall not call on his brother. 4. What I have promised I shall do. 5. He received me at the door.
 Allow me to write with your pen, for I have lost mine.
 I saw somebody come out of the house (somebody out of the house come), but I did not know him. 8. They helped each other. 9. Don't forget the books (forget the books not).

1 Tell in the sense of narrate or relate is erzählen, not fagen,

Lesson 25

COMPOUND VERBS WITH SEPARABLE PREFIXES

Separable Prefixes. Some of the commonest separable prefixes are

| ab off, from, away | hin ¹ along that way |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| an on, at | mit with, along |
| auf up, upon | nach after, for |
| aus out, from | nieder down |
| bei by, to | vor before, pre- |
| ein into | weg away, off, from |
| fest <i>fast, firm</i> | weiter further, on |
| fort forth, away, on | zu to, toward |
| heim home | zurüct back |
| her ¹ along this way | zusammen together |

¹ for denotes motion towards the speaker or towards the point of view which the speaker takes or wishes the reader to take; in other words, such motion as is described by *hither*, *here*, *this way*, *along this way*. for is the opposite of her, meaning *thither*, *there*, *that way*, *along that way*. With her and hin many compound separable prefixes are formed, e.g. heraus, as used in fomm heraus! come out (this way, toward me)! and hinaus, as used in geh hinaus! go out (that way, away from here or from me)!

Verbs compounded with these prefixes differ from the inseparable compounds in four points: (1) the prefix has the principal accent; (2) the ge of the past participle is put between the prefix and the verb; (3) when the infinitive requires zu to, this is put between the prefix and the verb; (4) in the present and past, and in the imperative, the prefix is separated from the verb and put at the end of the clause, unless the clause be a dependent one with transposed order, in which case the prefix remains united with the verb.

Model: an'fangen begin.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

an' fangen an' an' gefangen begin

| - | | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| PRES. INI | D. PAST II | TD. | IMPERATIVE |
| I begin | I bega | n | be gin |
| ich fange at | r' ich fing at | t' 2. sing | s. fang(e) an' |
| du fängft a | n' du fingft | an' 2. plus | r. fangt an' |
| er fängt an wir fangen | | ť 2. sing t anť 2. plu: | g. and fangen Sie an' |
| ihr fangt a: fie fang en | n' ihr fingt | an' | . |
| lie lungen | an lie linden | u | |
| FUT. INI | | PERF. IND. | PLUP. IND. |
| I shall beg | rin I | have begun | I had begun |
| ich werde an'f | angen ich ha | be an'gefangen | ich hatte an'gefangen |
| etc. | | etc. | etc. |
| • | | | |
| | 70 | CABULARY | |
| gehö'ren vertau'fen | gehör'te verkauf'te | gehört verfauft | belong sell |
| | | | |

| auf hören | hörte auf | auf'gehört | cease, stop |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| auf' machen | machte auf | auf'gemacht | open |
| auf' wachen | wachte auf | ist aufgewacht | awake |
| auf'stehen | stand auf | ist auf gestanden | rise, get up |
| fort' fahren | fuhr fort' | fort'gefahren | continue, go on |
| herun'terfallen | fiel herun'ter | ift herun'tergefallen | fall down |
| hinauf gehen | ging hinauf' | ist hinauf gegangen | go up |
| | | | |

1. Wem gehört das Haus, in dem Sie wohnen? Ift es Ihres? — Jett nicht mehr. Ich habe es gestern an (to) meinen Nachbar verlauft. 2. Schnell, machen Sie die Tür auf! 3. Als ich auf= hören wollte, baten mich die Kleinen in meiner Geschichte fortzusahren. 4. Da ist der Berg. Laß uns hinaufgehen. 5. Ich bin heute morgen um sechs Uhr aufgestanden. 6. "Fall nicht herun= ter!" rief er, als er mich oben in dem Baume sah.

Translate in the following order: 7-7^a etc.

7. Wann fängt er das neue 7ª. Ich weiß nicht, wann er es Buch an? aufängt.

8. Er fagt, er wacht immer um 8ª. fünf Uhr auf. fünf l

8ª. Er fagt, daß er immer um fünf Uhr **aufwacht.** 9. Ich frage dich: "Ging er hinauf oder kam er herunter, als du ihn jahjt?"

10. Ich wünsche morgen um sechs Uhr aufzustehen.

9ª. Ich frage dich, ob er hin= aufging ober herunterkam, als du ihn fahst.

10ª. Ich will morgen um sechs Uhr aufstehen.

1. Who (has) opened the door? 2. Let us stop reading (to read). 3. When did you get up (use perf.) to-day? I got up (perf.) when I woke up. 4. I saw that the boy fell down from the tree. 5. He went on writing (to write). 6. Who says that he has sold his horses? 7. Whenever I went up, he was coming down. 8. Sell me some of your books, will you? 9. Get up, Charles, quick! It is high time to go to school.

Lesson 26

COMPOUND VERBS WITH DOUBTFUL PREFIXES

Doubtful Prefixes. Durch through, über over, across, um round, about, unter under and wieber again form both separable and inseparable compounds. As a rule, these prefixes are separable when used in a literal sense, i. e. with the meanings given above, and inseparable when used in a derived or figurative sense. This twofold use sometimes has its counterpart in English; thus, from unter under and gehen go are made

| un'tergehen go un'der | and | unterge'hen <i>undergo</i> ' |
|----------------------------|-----|------------------------------|
| ging un'ter went un'der | and | unterging' underwent' |
| un'tergegangen gone un'der | and | untergan'gen undergone' |

The following are some of the most important compounds of this class:

SEPARABLE

| ii'bersetzen | setzte ü'ber | ü'bergeset | ferry over |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| um bringen | brachte um' | um'gebracht | kill, murde r |
| wie'derbringen | brachte wie'der | wie'dergebracht | bring back |
| wie'derholen | holte wie'der | wie'dergeholt | fetch back |
| wie'dersehen | sah wie'der | wie'dergesehen | see or meet again |

INSEPARABLE

| überfal'len | überfiel | überfal'len | surprise, attack |
|---------------------|--------------|---------------|-------------------|
| überse'ten | übersets'te | übersett' | translate |
| überze u'gen | überzeug'te | überzeugt' | convince |
| unterbre'chen | unterbrach' | unterbro'chen | in terrupt |
| unterneh'men | unternahm' | unternom'men | undertake |
| wiederho'len | wiederhol'te | wiederholt' | r epeat |

With the prefixes above are sometimes classed: hinter behind, miß amiss, mis-, voll fully and wider against, re-. Their compounds, however, are mostly inseparable, e.g.:

| hinterlas'sen | hinterließ' | hinterlaf'sen | leave (behind) |
|---------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| vollbrin'gen | vollbrach'te | vollbracht | accomplish, carry out |
| vollen'den | vollen'dete | vollen'det | finish |

1. Da er das Pferd nicht wiederbrachte, so ging ich selbst (or selber) hin, um es wiederzuholen. 2. Herr Prosesson Schmidt hat dieses kleine Buch übersett. 3. Wie seid ihr über den Fluß gekommen? Einer von deinen Nachbarn hat uns übergesett. 4. Ich wiederhole es: wenn du mich noch einmal¹ unterbrichst, so höre ich auf zu lesen. 5. Das hat er mir alles schon einmal erzählt, aber es überzeugt mich nicht. 6. Was man unternimmt, das muß man auch vollbringen, und was man ansängt, muß man auch vollenden. 7. Als ich ihn nach zehn Iahren wiedersah, war er schon ein alter Mann. 8. Die Feinde übersielen unsere Soldaten und brachten viele von ihnen um. 9. Solange er noch lebte, hielt² man ihn immer für sehr reich; als er aber starb, hinterließ er seinen Kindern nur sehr wenig Geld.

¹Once more or again. —² regarded, took him to be.

1. When he said that, I interrupted him. 2. Please, repeat what you (have) said. 3. I will bring back the books to-morrow. 4. If you cannot carry out what you undertake, it is better not to undertake it. 5. I begged him to translate it, but he was not able to translate it. 6. Has he left much money? None at all. 7. They murdered the poor man because they took him to be rich. 3. Will you ferry me across?

Lesson 27

THE PASSIVE VOICE

The Passive is formed with werden and the past participle of some transitive verb, e.g. lieben, liebte, geliebt *love*. When so used, werden has for its past participle worden, instead of geworden, as shown below:

| PRES. IND. | PAST IND. |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| I am loved | I was loved |
| ich werde geliebt | ich wurde geliebt |
| du wirst geliebt | du wurdest geliebt |
| er wird geliebt | er wurde geliebt |
| wir werden geliebt | wir wurden geliebt |
| ihr werdet geliebt | ihr wurdet geliebt |
| fie werden geliebt | fie wurden geliebt |

The Imperative is too rarely used to be given here.

FUTURE INDICATIVE

I shall be loved ich werde geliebt werden du wirst geliebt werden etc.

I have been loved ich bin geliebt worden du bift geliebt worden etc.

PERF. IND

PLUP. IND.

I had been loved ich war geliebt worden du warst geliebt worden otc.

PRESENT INFINITIVE

geliebt (zu) werden (to) be loved

The Passive denotes a process, a change of condition, or an action as affecting the person or thing acted on. This, in German, is indicated by using werben, become, instead of fein, be, which latter, if used with a past participle for a predicate adjective, denotes a state or condition, and never an vetion as going on. Distinguish, therefore, as follows: Berben with a past participle, denoting a process or a change of condition (i. e. the real passive):

der Brief wurde gerade geschrieben, als ich kam the letter was just being written when I came

der Brief muß mit Tinte ge= schrieben werden the letter must be written in ink

ber Soldat war gefangen wors ben the soldier had been captured Sein with a past participle, denoting a state or a condition resulting from a process or from an action completed :

ber Brief war schon geschrie= ben, als ich kam the letter was (already written) finished when I came.

der Brief muß um zwölf Uhr geschrieben sein the letter must be finished by twelve o'clock

der Soldat war gefangen the soldier was a captive

VOCABULARY

| der Schne | eider | die Schneider <i>tailor</i> |
|---------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| das Papi | er' | die Papie're paper |
| der Rock | | die Röcke coat |
| das Holz | | die Hölzer wood |
| heißen | hieß | geheißen be called |
| gefallen | gefiel | gefallen please |
| darum therefore, for that | t reason | gerade, adv., just, exactly |
| 'n | oeit <i>far, di</i> | stant, wide |
| mie heihen Gie? anhat | ie 1101100 | ich heiße Parl ma name is |

wie heißen Sie? what is your ich heiße Karl my name is name? Charles

 Das eine Bild wurde mir heute von¹ einem Diener gebracht²; bas andere wird vielleicht erst³ nächsten Montag geschickt werden.²
 Rarl ist von einem andern Knaben geschlagen worden.² 3. Ich hörte wohl,⁴ daß ich gerusen wurde, aber ich wußte nicht von¹ wem.
 Von welchem Schneider haben Sie diesen Rock machen lassen ⁵? — Warum fragen Sie? gesällt er Ihnen nicht? — Doch,⁶ gerade weil er mir sehr gut gesällt, darum frage ich. Ein Rock fann gar nicht besser gemacht werden. — Nun⁷, der Schneider heißt Meher und wohnt nicht weit von Ihnen. 5. Wann wird bas haus verlauft werden? Es ist schon verlauft. 6. Aus Holz wird jest oft Pa= pier gemacht. ¹ By. The person by whom the action of a passive verb is done, is denoted by the dative with von. $-^{2}$ As in the active, the uninflected forms of the verb stand last. $-^{8}$ erft, as adverb, often means not until. $-^{4}$ indeed, to be sure. $-^{5}$ The infinitive laffen is here used for the past participle gelaffen (as with the modal auxil., L. 22. 11) and the infinitive maden has passive force (L. 20. 1. n. ¹); hence By what tailor did you have this coat made? $-^{6}$ Yes, indeed or Certainly, a common meaning of both after a negative question. $-^{7}$ Well.

1. What is the name of the tailor who (has) made your coat? His name is Smith. 2. Can you tell me by whom these books were (have been) brought? By a little boy whom I do not know. 3. Only two of those chairs were made of (aus) wood. 4. The enemy was defeated (use fthegen) by our soldiers. 5. If the house is sold, it is no longer his, that is true. 6. Go and call Charles. — Charles has already been called. 7. These soldiers will be sent across the river, those will stay here behind the mountain. 8. Here are two coats, they must be sent to the (3um) tailor. 9. The paper did not please me, and for that reason I did not take it. 10. His books are read by everybody.

Lesson 28

REFLEXIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS

Reflexive Verbs. In German, as in English, transitive verbs are often used with a reflexive pronoun for an object, e. g. er zeigt fich he shows himself, fie fest fich she seats herself. But German, unlike English, uses some verbs reflexively though the reflexive pronoun is no longer felt as an object and the verbal idea of the combination has become virtually intransitive, e. g. er freut fich (he gladdens himself, i. e.) he rejoices or is glad. — The reflexive pronoun of the third person, for both numbers and all genders, is fich (L. 7. II); for the other persons the corresponding personal pronoun is used, as shown below.

INFINITIVE

sich (zu) zeigen (to) show one's self sich (zu) freuen (to) rejoics

PRESENT INDICATIVE

| ich zeige mich I show myself | ich freue mich 1 rejoice |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| du zeigst dich you show yourself | du freust dich you rejoice |
| er zeigt sich he shows himself | er freut sich etc. |
| sie zeigt sich she shows herself | sie freut sich |
| es zeigt sich it shows itself | es freut sich |
| wir zeigen uns we show ourselves | wir freuen uns |
| ihr zeigt euch you show yourselves | ihr freut euch |
| sie zeigen sich they show themselves | fie freuen sich |
| Sie zeigen sich you show yourself | Sie freuen sich |
| or you show yourselves | |

PAST INDICATIVE

ich zeigte mich I showed myself ich freute mich I rejoiced etc.

etc.

| 600. | CIU. |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| IMPERATI | VE |
| zeige bich show yourself | freue dich <i>rejoice</i> |
| zeigt euch show yourselves | freut euch <i>rejoice</i> |
| zeigen Sie sich show yourself or | freuen Sie sich <i>rejoice</i> |
| show yourselves | |

FUTURE INDICATIVE

| ich werde mich zeigen | ich werde mich freuen |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| I shall show myself | I shall rejoice |

PERFECT INDICATIVE

| ich habe mich gezeigt | ich habe mich gefr eut |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| I have shown myself | I have rejoiced |

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE

| ich hatte mich gezeigt | ich hatte mich gefreut |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| I had shown myself | I had rejoiced |

Impersonal Verbs, or verbs and verb-phrases used impersonally, with es it for a subject, are not peculiar in their infloction, e. g. es regnet it rains, es regnete it rained, es hat geregnet it has rained, es wird regnen it will rain.

> VOCABULARY lett, adj., last mährend, prep. with gen., during

BEGINNING GERMAN

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

| I should have | I should be | I should become |
|------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| ich würde haben | ich würde sein | ich würde werden |
| du würdeft haben | du würd eft sein | du würdeft werden |
| etc. | etc. | etc. |

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

| I should have had | I should have been | I should have become |
|---|---|--|
| ich würde du würdest etc. gehabt haben | ich würde du würdeft etc. gewesen fein | ich würde du würdeft etc. geworden |

These forms are used chiefly in sentences containing Use. one clause expressing a condition, or supposition, contrary to fact, and another clause expressing a conclusion, or result, which would follow if the condition were a fact:

In the present or in the immediate future, **A**.

| CONDITION | CONCLUSION |
|--|--|
| If I had money, or Had I money, | I should be happy |
| Wenn ich Geld hätte, (past. subj.) | fo wäre ich glücklich (past subj.) or, less often, fo würde ich glücklich sein (pres. conditional) |
| a | r |
| Hätte ich Gelb, (past. subj., with inverted order in- stead of menn with transposed order) | fo wäre ich glücklich or, less often, fo würde ich glücklich fein |
| or, with invers | ion of clauses, |
| CONCLUSION | CONDITION |
| I should be happy, | if I had money (had I money) |
| Jch wäre glücklich,] | menn ich Gielb hötte |

wenn ich Geld hätte (less often, hätte ich Gelb) ۱

OT

3ch würde glücklich fein,

In the past, **B**. CONDITION CONCLUSION If I had had money. I should have been happy or Had I had money. fo wäre ich g. gewesen (pluperf. subj.) Wenn ich G. gehabt hätte, or, less often, (pluperf. subj.) fo murbe ich g. gemefen fein (perf. conditional) or so wäre ich a. gewesen Hätte ich G. gehabt, or, less often, (pluperf. subj., with inverted order inso würde ich g. gewesen sein stead of wenn with transposed order) or, with inversion of clauses, CONCLUSION CONDITION

| I should have been happy, | if I had had money (had I had m.) |
|---|--|
| Jch wäre g. gewesen, or, less often, Jch würde g. gewesen sein, | wenn ich G. gehabt hätte (less often hätte ich G. gehabt) |

Observe: 1. The Condition, or the *if*-clause, takes the subjunctive only, not the conditional.

2. The Condition may be implied only, or partly expressed: How happy I should be! Wie glücklich würde ich fein or wäre ich! (supply e.g. if I were rich wenn ich reich wäre) or At 12 o'clock it would have been too late Um zwölf Uhr würde es zu spät gewesen sein or wäre es zu spät gewesen (here the complete Condition may be supposed to be: If we had been there at 12 o'clock Wenn wir um zwölf Uhr gesommen wären).

The Conclusion may be implied only, or partly expressed: If I only were rich! Wenn ich nur reich wäre! or Wäre ich nur reich! (supply e. g. how happy I should be wie glücklich würbe ich sein or wäre ich) or He spoke as (= as he would speak) if he were rich Er sprach, als (= als er sprechen würde) wenn er reich wäre or (without if and with inverted order) als wäre er reich.

3. In sentences with a Condition not contrary to fact, the indicative is used in both clauses:

| CONDITION | CONCLUSION |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| If he has money, | he is happy |
| Wenn er Geld hat, | so ist er glücklich |
| If (whenever) he had money, | he was happy |
| Wenn er Geld hatte, | jo war er glüðliðj |
| If he has been the re , | he has seen her |
| Wenn er da gewesen ist, | so hat er sie gesehen |

The following sentences may serve for further practice, either before or after Part II of this Lesson.

1. Were I a king, I should not be happier than I am now. 2. He would never have grown rich. 3. It would now be too late to go. 4. He spoke as if he had been there. 5. He would have been there (already), if he had had more time. 6. You would have been much happier if you had had something to do. 7. If I only had been there! 8. If he has said it, nobody has heard it.

Π

1. The past subjunctive of regular weak verbs is like the past indicative; that of strong verbs differs from the past indicative in the endings and in the modification of the stemvowel, if this be capable of modification:

| WEAK | C |
|------|---|
|------|---|

STRONG

| PAST IND. | PAST SUBJ. | PAST IND. | PAST SUBJ. |
|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| ich fagte | ich fag te | ich kam | ich fäme |
| du sagteft | du sagtest | du kam st | du kämest |
| er sagte | er sagte | er kam | er fäme |
| wir sag ten | wir sag ten | wir kam en | wir fäm en |
| ihr sag tet | ihr sag tet | ihr famt | ihr fämet |
| fie sag ten | fie sagten | sie kamen | fie kämen |

2. The pluperfect subjunctive and the two conditionals, of both and strong verbs, are made like those of haben, fein and werden:

96

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

Auxiliary haben : ich hätte { gesagt or gesehen Auxiliary sein : ich wäre { gefolgt or gefommen

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

ich würde sagen or sehen or folgen or kommen

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

| Auxiliary haben: | Auxiliary sein: | |
|---|--|--|
| ich würde { gesagt haben or gesehen haben | ich würde { gefolgt sein or getommen sein | |

3. The past subjunctive of the following irregular weak verbs (L. 19. 11) and modal auxiliaries (L. 22) is like the past indicative with *umlaut* added (cf. hatte and hätte):

| PAST IND. | PAST SUBJ. | PAST IND. | PAST SUBJ. |
|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| ich brach te | ich bräch te | ich durf te | ich dürf te |
| ich dachte | ich dächte | ich konnte | ich könnte |
| | | ich mochte | ich möchte |
| | | ich mußte | ich müßte |
| | | ich wußte | ich wüßte |

VOCABULARY

| der Himmel | die Himmel sky, heaver | r |
|------------|------------------------|---|
| die Erde | die Erden earth | |

| hoffen | hoffte | gehofft <i>hope</i> |
|--|-----------|--|
| verdienen | verdiente | verdient earn |
| ausfehen | fah aus | ausgesehen look, appear |
| mächtig <i>mighty, p</i> allmächtig <i>almight</i> möglich <i>possible</i> | • | je ever feit, with dat., since fonft else, otherwise |

1. Hätte der Himmel nicht so schwarz ausgeschen, so wäre ich nicht nach Hause gegangen. 2. Wenn ich den Brief nicht schon gestern geschrieben hätte, so hätte ich heute zu Hause bleiben müsse sen (L. 22. 11), um ihn zu schreiben. 3. Wie leicht könnte er 1. What should you have done (tun) if I had not come? I should have gone home alone. 2. That old gentleman must be rich, else he could not give us so much money for the poor. 3. That isn't possible. If God is really almighty, he is also the Lord of the earth. 4. How would it look if we gave them nothing at all! 5. All talked as if they were earning a great deal of (much) money. 6. How glad she would be to see you again! 7. If I had written to (an with acc.) Mr. Smith since that day, I should have also written to you. 8. He still hopes to get rich.

Lesson 30

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT STATEMENT

Ι

Inflection of the present, perfect and future subjunctive of Haben Sein Werden

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

| ich habe | ich sei | ich werd e |
|-----------|-----------|-------------------|
| du habeft | du seieft | du werdest |
| er habe | er sei | er werde |

98

| wir hab en | wir sei en | wir werd en |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| ihr hab et | ihr sei et | ihr werd et |
| fie hab en | sie seien | sie werden |

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

| ich habe gehabt | ich sei gewesen | ich sei geworden |
|--------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| du hab eft gehabt | du seieft gewesen | du sei est geworden |
| etc. | etc. | etc. |

FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE

| ich werde haben | ich werde sein | ich werde werden |
|------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| du werdeft haben | du werd eft sein | du werdeft werden |
| etc. | etc. | etc. |

The meaning of these forms, as of subjunctive forms in general, varies according to their use and can best be learned from the examples given below.

Use. The subjunctive forms of the present, perfect and future are found most frequently in dependent clauses after words of saying, reporting, thinking, inquiring, doubting and the like. Their use in such clauses is to emphasize the indirect or hearsay character of that which is said, reported etc., whereas the indicative tends to make it appear as actual.

| DIRECT STATEMENT | INDIRECT STATEMENT | | |
|--|--|--|--|
| A. says or has said to B.: | B. says or reports to C.: | | |
| 1. I have no money 3ch habe kein Geld | 1ª A. says that he has no money A. jagt, daß er kein Geld habe | | |
| | 1 ^{h.} A. said that he had no money A. fagte, daß er kein Geld habe | | |
| 2. Who has been here? Wer ist hier gewesen? | 2^a A. asks who has been here A. fragt, wer hier gewesen sei 2^{b.} A. asked who had been here A. fragte, wer hier gewesen | | |

3. I think she will soon get well again 3ch glaube, sie wird bald wieder gesund werden 3ª A. thinks she will soon get well again A. glaubt, fie werde bald wieder gesund werden

3^{b.} A. thought she would soon get well again A. glaubte, sie werde bald wieder gesund werden

Observe: 1. As a rule, the same tense of the subjunctive is used in the indirect statement as in the direct, whether the principal verb is in the present, as in 1^{a} (fagt), 2^{a} (fragt) and 3^{a} (glaubt) or in the past, as in 1^{b} (fagte), 2^{b} (fragte) and 3^{b} (glaubte).

2. After a principal verb in the present tense, we often find the indicative. Thus, B. may say to C. A. fagt, daß er fain Gelb hat. But then C. does not feel so clearly that B. is reporting something on another's (A.'s) authority. What C. hears sounds like the direct statement of an actual or at least generally accepted fact, whereas by saying A. fagt, daß er fein Gelb habe, B. repeats or adds as it were "this is what A. says, you know," and thus declines all responsibility for the truth of A.'s statement.

After a principal verb in the first person of the present, as in 3, the indicative only is used, for here the speaker is not reporting the words of another person, but is stating in the directest way possible a thought of his own.

The following sentences may serve for further practice, either before or after Part II of this Lesson.

| DIRECT STATEMENT | INDIRECT STATEMENT |
|---|---|
| A. says or has said to B.: | B. says or reports to C.: |
| 1. I am the son of that gentle- man and the girls are my sisters | 1a. A. says he is the son of that gentleman and the girls are his sisters |
| | 1 ^{b.} A. said he was the son of that gentleman and the girls were his sisters |
| 2. I think C. has one of my books | 2ª. A. thinks that you (bu) have one of his books |

2^{b.} A. thought that you (bu) had one of his books

3ª A. says he shall never grow rich

3b. A. said he should never grow rich

4ª. A. says I am his best friend 4b. A. said I was his best friend

5ª A. asks whether she has been here and whether she has had the book (already (don)

5^{b.} A. asked whether she had been here and whether she had had the book (already (don)

п

1. The present subjunctive of all verbs (except that of fein) is made by adding to the stem of the infinitive the endings e, eft, e, en, et, en:

| ich sage | fomme | fehe | helf e | dürfe | wisse |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------|-----------------|---------|---------|
| du sagest | fomm est | feheft | helf eft | dürfest | misseft |
| er sage | fomme | fehe | helfe | dürfe | wisse |
| wir sag en | fomm en | fehen | helf en | dürfen | wissen |
| ihr fag et | fommet | fehet | helf et | dürfet | wiffet |
| fie fag en | fomm en | fehen | helfen | dürfen | wissen |

Though the stems of verbs like fehen, helfen (L. 20), bürfen (L. 22), wiffen (L. 23), as also those of haben and werden, undergo a change in several forms of the present *indicative*, they remain unchanged throughout the present *subjunctive*.

2. The perfect and future subjunctive are made like those of haben, fein and werden:

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

| Auxiliary haben | Auxiliary fein | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|--|--|
| ich habe) gejagt or | ich fei } getommen or | | |
| du habeft) gejehen | du fei eft gefolgt | | |
| otc. | etc. | | |

3. I shall never grow rich

4. You are my best friend, B.

5. Has she been here and has she had the book (already idion)?

FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE

| ich werde bu werdeft etc. | fagen, kommen, fehen, dürfen, wissen, etc. |
|---------------------------------|---|
|---------------------------------|---|

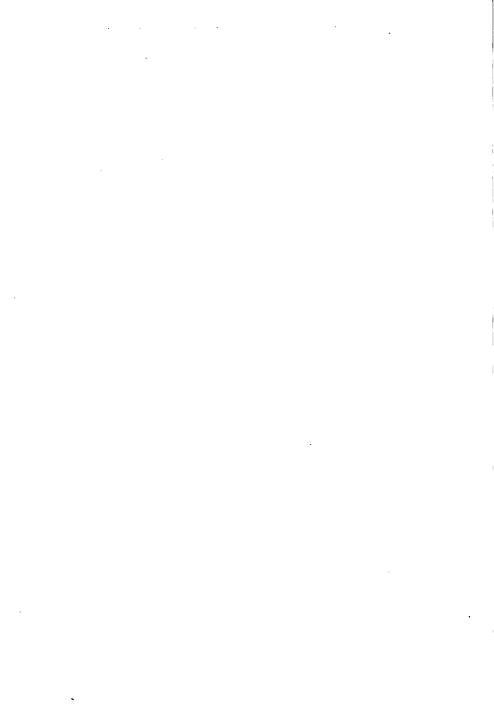
VOCABULARY

| | der Efel | die Esel donkey | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|--|--|
| | der Fall | die Fäll e case, fall | | |
| • | der Stein | die Steine stone | | |
| • | die Welt | die Welten world | | |
| ftellen | ftellte | gestellt place, put | | |
| werfen | warf | geworfen throw | | |
| ziehen | 30g | gezogen draw, pull | | |
| verstehen | verstand | verstanden understand | | |
| sicher safe, | sure | bamit in order that, so that | | |
| schwer heavy, difficult | | deshalb for that reason, therefore | | |
| recht right | | woher whence, from where | | |
| recht haben | be in the right | wohin whither, where | | |

1. Ich fragte ihn, ob es nicht sehr schwer sei, Deutsch zu lernen, aber er antwortete mir, er habe es fehr leicht gefunden. 2. Der Alte sah aus dem Fenster und wollte wissen, ob ich den Stein ge= worfen hätte¹ oder der andere Knabe. 3. Daß er recht hat, weiß ich ganz gewiß. 4. haben Sie mich verstanden oder nicht? ---Ganz aut. — Nun, warum antworten Sie denn² nicht? — Weil Sie mir gesagt haben, ich folle nicht sprechen, wenn man mich nicht frage, und ich bin nicht gefragt worden, deshalb habe ich nicht ge= antwortet. 5. Alte Leute glauben zu gern, daß die Welt von Tag zu Tage schlechter werde. 6. Nachdem wir in die Berge tamen, tauften wir uns jeder einen Gfel und ritten, denn es wurde uns gesagt (or denn uns wurde gesagt, without es), diese Tiere seien viel sicherer als Pferde, und wir überzeugten uns bald, daß das der Fall war. 7. Wenn Sie den herrn morgen sehen, so fragen Sie ihn, bitte, woher er kommt und wohin er geht. 8. In dem fleinen magen, der von einem Efel gezogen wurde, faßen zwei Knaben. wären⁸ die Söhne des Grafen, fagte der Bauer, der uns führte. 9. Er legte das Buch auf einen Stuhl und stellte den Stuhl neben die Tür, damit sein Freund das Buch fände.⁴

¹ Here the verb of the direct question was in the perf. ind., haft bu ben Stein geworfen? Yet the indirect form is that of the plup. subj., ob . . . hätte, because the perf. subj., ob . . . habe, could not be distinguished from the perf. ind. A change of tense, then, (from the pres. to the past, from the perf. to the pluperf. and from the future to the present conditional) is resorted to in order to gain a distinctive form of the subj. -2 why, then . . .? or why, please? -3 Here too the tense of the direct statement, Sie find bie Söhue etc., has been changed, but not for the reason given in note 1 above, for here [eien, the subj. of the pres., would not only be sufficiently distinctive, but also preferable. Yet, in the spoken language, especially of Northern Germany, the subjunctive of the past or pluperfect is often found where we should expect, and where in the more careful written language we do find the subjunctive of the present or perfect respectively. -4 The subjunctive is also common in clauses of purpose.

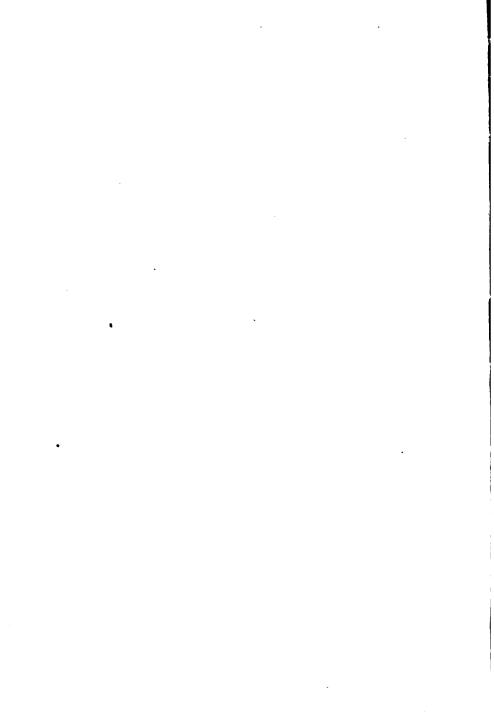
1. I asked her whether Dr. S. had come and she said that he was up-stairs in Henry's room. 2. I do not believe that he is in the right. 3. The man asked me whether the boy had hit the bird. 4. She did not believe that such (that) was the case. 5. If the books were not so heavy, I should carry them myself. 6. Father wanted to know whether I had given the donkey some water. 7. Tell me first where you come from. 8. Two or three days ago, we sent them a letter so that they might know where we are at present. 9. Mr. A. told Mr. B. that I had sold my house already. 10. I cannot believe that our neighbors are so bad. 11. Charles asks whether you (have) understood what he said. 12. Don't ask me where he is, for I hardly know him.



AN ABSTRACT

OF

GERMAN GRAMMAR



AN ABSTRACT OF GERMAN GRAMMAR

INFLECTIONS

1. German words capable of inflection are here treated under the following heads:

I. Verb Inflections, comprising all verbs.

II. Odd or Unclassified Inflections, comprising a few pronouns, as ich *I*, ber that etc.

III. Complete Strong Inflection, comprising certain pronouns and pronominal or numeral adjectives, as the definite article ber the, welfher who, which, aller all etc.

IV. Defective Strong Inflection, comprising certain other pronominals or numerals, as the indefinite article ein a, an, fein no, mein my etc.

V. Noun Inflections, comprising all nouns.

VI. Double Inflection, Strong and Weak, comprising all ordinary, or descriptive, adjectives, a few pronominals, all substantive adjectives, the comparatives and superlatives of adjectives and all ordinal numerals.

All references in the Abstract are to sections, not to pages.

I. VERB INFLECTIONS

2. The Stem of a verb is found by dropping from the present infinitive the final en or n.

3. The Principal Parts are the present infinitive, the first person singular of the past indicative and the past participle.

4. Weak and Strong Verbs. Verbs are divided, with reference to their inflection, into two classes, the weak and the strong. In the weak verbs, the 1. sing. of the past ind. adds te or ete to the stem, and the past participle adds t or et.

In the strong verbs, the 1. sing. of the past ind. changes the em-vowel, but takes no ending, and the past participle adds en.

In both weak and strong verbs, the past participle has the prefix ge.

EXAMPLES (principal parts):

| weak { | lob—en | lob—te | ge-lob -t | praise, praised, praised |
|----------|-------------------------------|---------|--------------------|---|
| | red—en | red—ete | ge-red -e t | talk, talked, talked |
| strong { | feh—en fecht—en fing—en | focht | ge-focht-en | see, saw, seen fight, fought, fought sing, sang, sung |

THE AUXILIARY VERBS

Haben Sein Werben

5. These three verbs are used to form the compound tenses of all verbs and are therefore taken up separately. The first belongs with the weak verbs, the others with the strong, but each has some irregular forms. Those of their endings which are regular and will occur again in later verbs are in bold-faced type.

6. Principal Parts:

haben hatte gehabt have, had, had jein war ift ¹ gewesen be, was, (has) been werden wurde or ward ² ift ¹ geworden become, became, (has) become

¹The princ. parts of all verbs whose perfect, pluperfect and future perfect are made with fein instead of haben are given with ift (lit. is) before the past part. and should be so learned. For a list of such verbs see $187.-^{2}$ This is an older and rarer form, see 9.

The Simple Forms of haben, fein and werden.

7. Haben

| Pre | s. Ind. | Pres | s. Subj. | Pas | st Ind. | Pas | t Subj. |
|-----|---------------|------|----------------|-----|---------------|---------|-----------------|
| I | hav e | I ma | y have | I | had | I might | or should h. |
| ich | habe | ich | hab e | ich | hat te | ich | hät te |
| du | haft | du | hab eft | bu | hatteft | du | hät teft |
| er | hat | er | habe | er | hatte | er | hät te |
| wir | hab en | wir | hab en | wir | hatten | wir | hät ten |
| ihr | habt | ihr | hab et | ihr | hattet | ihr | hät tet |
| fie | hab en | fie | haben | fie | hatten | fie | hät ten |

sing. habe have
 plur. habt have
 sing. or plur. haben Sie have

Present Participle habend having

8. Sein

| Pres | s. Ind. | Pres. Subj. |
|------|--------------|-------------------|
| Ι | am | I may be |
| ich | bin | ich sei |
| du | bi ft | du seieft |
| er | ift | er sei |
| wir | sind | wir sei en |
| ihr | feid | ihr seiet |
| fie | find | sie seien |

Imperative

2. sing. fei be
 2. plur. feid be
 2. sing. or plur. feien Sie be

Present Participle seiend being

2. plur. werdet become

2. sing. or plur. werden Sie become

9. Werden

| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Subj. | | Past Ind. | Pas | t Subj. |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----|------------------|-------|-----------------|
| I become | I may become | | I became I migi | ht or | should become |
| ich werde | ich werde | ich | wurde (ward) | ich | würde |
| du wirft | du werdest | du | wurdest (wardst) | du | würde ft |
| er wird | er werd e | er | wurde (ward) | er | würde |
| wir werd en | wir werd en | wir | wurden | wir | würd en |
| ihr werd et | ihr werd et | ihr | wurd et | ihr | würd et |
| fie werden | sie werd en | fie | wurd en | fie | wiird en |
| In | perative | | Presen | t Inf | initive |
| 2. sing. we | erde become | | (zu) werden | n (t | o) become |

Present Infinitive (zu) haben (to) have

Past Participle gehabt had

| Pas | st Ind. | Past Subj. | | | | |
|-----|--------------|------------|----------------|--|--|--|
| I | was | I might of | or should be | | | |
| ich | war | ich | wär e | | | |
| du | warft | du | wär eft | | | |
| er | war | er | wäre | | | |
| wir | waren | wir | wär en | | | |
| ihr | war t | ihr | wär et | | | |
| fie | waren | fie | wär en | | | |

Present Infinitive (au) sein (to) be

Past Participle gewesen been

| Present Participle | • | Past Participle |
|--------------------------|---|-----------------|
| werd end becoming | | geworden |

The Compound Forms of haben, fein and werben.

10. Haben

Sein and Berben

Perfect Indicative

| | relier mulative | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------|--------|-----|------|---------------------|--|
| 1 | have | had | • | I ha | ve been or become | |
| ich | habe | gehabt | ich | bin | gewesen or geworden | |
| du | hast | gehabt | du | bist | gewesen or geworden | |
| er | hat | gehabt | er | iſt | gewesen or geworden | |
| wir | haben | gehabt | wir | find | gewesen or geworden | |
| ihr | habt | gehabt | ihr | feid | gewesen or geworden | |
| fie | haben | gehabt | fie | find | gewesen or geworden | |

Perfect Subjunctive

| I may ha | ve had | I me | ıy have beer | n or become |
|-----------|--------|----------|--------------|-------------|
| ich habe | gehabt | ich sei | gewesen (| or geworden |
| du habest | gehabt | du seie | ft gewesen | or geworden |
| er habe | gehabt | er sei | gewesen | or geworden |
| wir haben | gehabt | wir seie | n gewefen | or geworden |
| ihr habet | gehabt | ihr seie | t gewesen | or geworden |
| sie haben | gehabt | sie seie | n gewesen | or geworden |

Pluperfect Indicative

| I had had | I had been or become |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| ich hatte gehabt | ich war gewesen or geworden |
| du hattest gehabt | du warst gewesen or geworden |
| er hatte gehabt | er war gewesen or geworden |
| wir hatten gehabt | wir waren gewesen or geworden |
| ihr hattet gehabt | ihr wart gewesen or geworden |
| fie hatten gehabt | sie waren gewesen or geworden |

Pluperfect Subjunctive

I might or should have had I might or should have been or become

| ich | hätte | gehabt | ich | wäre | gewesen | \mathbf{or} | geworden |
|-----|---------|--------|-----|--------|---------|---------------|----------|
| du | hättest | gehabt | du | wärest | gewesen | \mathbf{or} | geworden |
| er | hätte | gehabt | er | wäre | gewesen | \mathbf{or} | geworden |
| wir | hätten | gehabt | wir | wären | gewesen | or | geworden |
| ihr | hättet | gehabt | ihr | wäret | gewesen | or | geworden |
| fie | hätten | gehabt | fie | wären | gewesen | \mathbf{or} | geworden |

110

Future Indicative

| I | shall h | ave | 1 | shall t | e or | bee | xome |
|-------|---------|-------|-----|---------|------|---------------|--------|
| ich : | werde | haben | ich | werde | sein | or | werden |
| du ! | wirst | haben | du | wirst | fein | or | werden |
| er | wird | haben | er | wird | sein | or | werden |
| wir | werden | haben | wir | werden | sein | or | werden |
| ihr 🛛 | werdet | haben | ihr | werdet | sein | \mathbf{or} | werden |
| fie | werden | haben | sie | werden | sein | or | werden |

Future Subjunctive

| | I shall | have | | | I shall | be c | or l | pecome | |
|-----|---------|-------|------|-----|---------|------|------|--------|------|
| ich | werde | haben | | ich | werde | sein | or | werden | |
| du | werdest | haben | etc. | du | werdest | sein | or | werden | etc. |

Future Perfect Indicative

I shall have had ich werde gehabt haben du wirst gehabt haben etc. I shall have been or become ich werde gewesen sein or geworden sein du wirst gewesen sein or geworden sein etc.

Future Perfect Subjunctive

I shall have had ich werde gehabt haben du werdest gehabt haben etc. I shall have been or become ich werde gewesen sein or geworden sein du werdest gewesen sein or geworden sein etc.

Present Conditional

| I | should h | iave | Ι | should i | be or | be | come |
|-----|----------|-------|-----|----------|-------|---------------|--------|
| ich | würde | haben | ich | würde | sein | or | werden |
| du | würdest | haben | du | würdest | fein | or | werden |
| er | würde | haben | er | würde | sein | or | werden |
| wir | würden | haben | wir | würden | sein | \mathbf{or} | werden |
| ihr | würdet | haben | ihr | würdet | sein | \mathbf{or} | werden |
| fie | würden | haben | fie | würden | sein | or | werden |

Perfect Conditional

I should have had ich würde gehabt haben du würdest gehabt haben ets.

I should have been or become ich würde gewesen sein or geworden sein du würdest gewesen sein or geworden sein etc.

Perfect Infinitive

| (to) have had | (to) have been or become |
|-------------------|---|
| gehabt (zu) haben | gewesen (zu) sein or geworden (zu) sein |

WEAK VERBS

11. Models. Loben lobte gelobt praise

SIMPLE FORMS

| Pres | . Ind. | Pres | . Subj. | Pa | st Ind. | Past | : Subj. |
|------|---------------|-------|----------------|-----|---------------|------------|-----------------|
| I p | raise | I may | praise | I p | raised | I might or | should praise |
| ich | lobe | ich | lobe | ich | lob te | ich | lob te |
| du | lob ft | du | lob eft | du | lobteft | bu | lob teft |
| er | lobt | er | lobe | er | lobte | er | lob te |
| wir | lob en | wir | lob en | wir | lobten | wir | lob ten |
| ihr | lobt | ihr | lobet | ihr | lobtet | ihr | lob tet |
| fie | lob en | fie | lob en | fie | lobten | fie | lob ten |

Imperative

Present Infinitive (zu) loben (to) praise

sing. lobe praise
 plur. lobt praise
 sing on plup lober Sie

2. sing. or plur. loben Sie praise Present Participle Past Participle

gelobt praised

Compound Forms

Perf. Ind.

lobend praising

I have praised ich habe gelobt du haft gelobt etc.

Plup. Ind.

I had praised ich hatte gelobt du hattest gelobt etc.

Fut. Ind.

I shall praise ich werde loben du wirst loben etc. Perf. Subj. I may have praised ich habe gelobt du habeft gelobt etc.

Plup. Subj.

I might or should have praised ich hätte gelobt du hätteft gelobt etc.

Fut. Subj.

I shall praise ich werde loben hu werdest loben etc. Fut. Perf. Ind.Fut. Perf. Subj.I shall have praisedI shall have praisedich werde gelobt habenich werde gelobt habenbu wirft gelobt haben etc.bu werdeft gelobt haben etc.Pres. Condit.Perf. Condit.

I should praise ich würde loben bu würdeft loben etc. I should have praised ich würde gelobt haben bu würdeft gelobt haben etc.

Perfect Infinitive gelobt (zu) haben (to) have praised

Reden rebete geredet talk

SIMPLE FORMS

| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Subj. | Past Ind. | Past Subj. |
|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| I talk | I may talk | I talked | I might or should talk |
| ich rede | ich red e | ich red ete * | ich red ete * |
| du redeft* | du red eft | du red eteft * | du red eteft * |
| er red et * | er rede | er redete * | er redete * |
| wir red en | wir reden | wir redeten * | wir redeten * |
| ihr red et * | ihr redet | ihr redetet * | ihr redetet * |
| sie reden | fie red en | sie redeten * | sie redeten * |

Imperative

2. sing. rede talk

2. plur. redet * talk

2. sing. or plur. reden Sie talk

Present Participle redend talking

Past Participle geredet* talked

Present Infinitive

(zu) reden (to) talk

* Inflect like reben, i. e. with the longer endings in the starred forms, all verbs with stems in b or t, and in m or n after a consonant (except mm or nn) e. g. warteft, öffnet, geatmet, atmete etc. See, however 18.6

COMPOUND FORMS They are made with haben

13. Folgen folgte ist gefolgt follow

SIMPLE FORMS They are made like those of loben

113

12.

COMPOUND FORMS

Perf. Ind. I have followed ich bin gefolgt du bift gefolgt etc.

Plup. Ind. I had followed ich war gefolgt du warst gefolgt etc.

Fut. Ind. *I shall follow* ich werde folgen du wirft folgen etc.

Fut. Perf. Ind. I shall have followed ich werbe gefolgt fein bu wirft gefolgt fein etc.

> Pres. Condit. I should follow ich würde folgen du würdeft folgen etc.

Perf. Subj.

I may have followed ich fei gefolgt du feieft gefolgt etc.

Plup. Subj. I might or should have followed ich wäre gefolgt bu wäreft gefolgt etc.

> Fut. Subj. *I shall follow* ich werde folgen du werdeft folgen etc.

Fut. Perf. Subj. I shall have followed ich werde gefolgt fein bu werdeft gefolgt fein etc.

Perf. Condit. I should have followed ich würde gefolgt fein du würdeft gefolgt fein etc.

Perfect Infinitive

gefolgt (zu) sein (to) have followed

14. Weak verbs in eln and ern frequently drop the e of these syllables before the ending e: ich handle (for handele from hanbeln act), ich wandre (for wandere from wandern wander).

15. Weak verbs of Foreign Origin in ieren form the past participle without the prefix ge: studiert (not "gestudiert") from studieren study.

16. Irregular Weak Verbs changing the stem-vowel e to a in the past indicative and past participle (but not in the past subj.):

| Inf. | Past Ind. | Past Subj. | Past Part. | |
|---------|-----------|------------|------------|------|
| brennen | brannte | brennte | gebrannt | burn |
| fennen | fannte | - fennte | gefannt | know |
| nennen | nannte | nennte | genannt | namo |

| rennen | rannte | rennte | ist gerannt | run |
|--------|-----------------|---------|------------------|--------------|
| fenden | f a ndte | fendete | gef a ndt | send |
| wenden | wandte | wendete | gewandt | tu rn |

Senden and wenden have also the regular form of the past indicative and past participle : fendete, gefendet, wendete, gewendet.

The following are still more irregular, but nearer their English equivalents:

| Inf. | Past Ind. | Past Subj. | Past Part | • | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|---|--------------------|---|
| bringen denken | brachte dachte | brächte dächte | gebracht geda cht | | brought thought | • |

STRONG VERBS

17. Stems of the Principal Parts. (1) The stem-vowel of the past is always different from that of the infinitive. The stem-vowel of the past participle is sometimes the same as that of the infinitive: [ehen [ah] ge[ehen see; sometimes the same as that of the past: [echten focht ge[ochten fight; and sometimes different from both: [ingen [ang ge[ungen sing.

(2) In most verbs the final consonant of the stem is the same in the past and past participle as in the infinitive; but

(a) Six verbs (shortening the vowel while changing it) double the consonant (b becoming tt) in the past and past participle; one, nehmen, in the past participle only:

greifen griff gegriffen grasp streiten strive reiten ritt ist gestitten ride leiden litt gestitten suffer schreiten schritt ist geschritten stride schneiden schnitt geschnitten eut nehmen nahm genommen take

(b) Four verbs (lengthening the vowel while changing it) simplify the consonant (c becoming !) in the past; one, bitten, in the past and past participle:

| erschrecken erschrak ist erschrocken | kommen kam ist gekommen come |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| be frightened | treffen traf getroffen hit |
| fallen fiel ist gefallen fall | bitten bat gebeten beg, ask |

Verbs with stems in ff change only the form of ff: laffen, infin., let; ließ, stem of past ind. and subj.; laß, 2. sing. imper.; laßt, 2. plur. imperative. (c) The following verbs undergo other changes of the stem: gehen ging ist gegangen go hauen hieb gehauen hew sitzen saf gesessen draw

18. The Present. In certain strong verbs, the second and third persons singular of the present indicative undergo special changes :

1

(1) Verbs with short e in the stem change this e to short i in the 2. and 3. sing. pres. ind.; e.g.

| brechen treffen | break h it | ich brech e ich treffe | du brichst du triffst | er bricht er trifft |
|---|--|---|--|---|
| | following verb the 2. and 3. si | | | change this |
| befehlen empfehlen lefen fehen ftehlen gefchehen | command recommend read see steal come to pass | ich befehle ich empfehle ich lefe ich fehe ich ftehle | bu befiehlst bu empfiehlst du liesest ¹ du siehst du stiehlst | er befiehlt er empfiehlt er lieft er fieht er ftiehlt es geschieht |

¹Commonly pronounced and not uncommonly written like the 3. sing., i.e. lieft. So also with the 2. sing. pres. ind. of other verbs (both weak and strong) whose stem ends in an s-sound.

(3) The following three verbs change long e to i, the last two doubling the final consonant of the stem:

| geben | give | ich gebe | du gibst ¹ | er gibt ¹ |
|----------------|------|-----------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| nehm en | take | ich nehme | du nimmft | er nimmt |
| treten | step | ich trete | du trittst | er tritt |

¹ Pronounced both long and short, and until recently written giebft, giebt.

(4) Verbs with a in the stem modify this a in the 2. and 3. sing. pres. ind.; e.g.

| tragen | carry | ich trage | du trägst | er trägt |
|----------|-------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| schlaten | sleep | ich schlafe | du schläfft | er schläft |

(5) Laufen *run* and stogen *push* always modify the stem-vowel in the 2. and 3. sing. pres. ind.: läusst, stögest stögest stögest stögest stögest stögest stögest. (6) The endings in the present indicative of strong and weak verbs are the same, but the following verbs with stems in t and vowel-changes as described above have it in the 2. sing. (instead of eit, see 12, note) and no ending at all in the 3. sing. (instead of et, see 12, note):

| fechten | fight | ich fechte | du fichtst | er ficht |
|----------------|----------------|------------|------------|--------------------|
| gelten | be worth | ich gelte | du giltst | er gilt |
| treten | step, tread | ich trete | du trittst | er tritt (3 above) |
| halten | hold | ich halte | du hältst | er hält |
| raten | adv ise | ich rate | du rätst | er rät |
| \mathbf{But} | | | | |
| reiten | ride | ich reite | du reiteft | er reit et |

19. The Past Subjunctive modifies the stem-vowel, if this be capable of modification, and takes the endings e, eft, e, en, et, en, as shown below in 22.

20. The Imperative of strong verbs changing e to i or it in the 2. and 3. sing. pres. ind. (except werden) makes the same change in the 2. sing. and drops the ending e, e.g.

| PRES. IND. SING. | | | IMP. | SING. |
|------------------|---------------|----------|---------|-------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 2 | |
| breche | brichst | bricht | brich | break |
| befehle | befiehlft | befiehlt | befiehl | command |
| gebe | gibst | gibt | gib | give |
| nehme | nimmít But | nimmt | nimm | take |
| werde | wirst | wird | werde | become, get |

The e is regularly omitted in many other strong verbs: fomm come, lag let etc.

21. The Past Participle sometimes drops the e of its ending, especially after h, e.g. gesehn seen. Iun do has getan done and essen has gegessen eaten.

22. Models. Sehen fah gesehen see

SIMPLE FORMS

Observe that the endings in the pres. ind. and subj. are the same as those of loben (11).

| | du fah ft er fah wir fahen | du fäh eft er fäh e wir fäh en |
|---|--|--|
| | | ihr fäh et fie fäh en |
| | Present | Infinitive jeh en |
| Compound ney are made am ift geko | ge Forms with haben mmen coms | Participle Sjeh en |
| ch fomme fommeft er fomme vir fommen hr fommet ie fommen | (zu) f | Past Subj. ich fäme du fämeft er fäme wir fämen ihr fämet fie fämen Infinitive ommen |
| | vir fehen hr fehet ie fehen ar. fehen Sie ple COMPOUND hey are made am ift geko SIMPLE Pres. Subj. ch fomme vir fomme vir fommen hr fommet ie fommen | vir fehen wir fahen hr fehet ihr faht ie fehen fie fahen Present (32) Ar. fehen Sie ple Past I COMPOUND FORMS hey are made with haben am ift gefommen come SIMPLE FORMS Pres. Subj. Past Ind. ch fomme ich fam bu fommeft bu famft er fomme er fam vir fommen wir famen hr fommet ihr famt ie fommen fie famen Present (32) |

Present Participle

fommend

Past Participle gefommen

COMPOUND FORMS They are made with feint

THE PASSIVE

~4. The auxiliary of the passive is werben, and the forms

of the passive are the forms of werden construed with the past participle of a transitive verb, as shown below.

> FORMS CORRESPONDING TO THE SIMPLE FORMS OF THE ACTIVE

| Pres. Ind. | | Pres. Subj. |
|----------------------|---|------------------------|
| I am praised | • | I may be praised |
| ich werde gelobt | | ich werde gelobt |
| du wirst gelobt etc. | | du werdest gelobt etc. |

Past Ind.

I was praised ich wurde (ward) gelobt du wurdest (wardst) gelobt etc.

Imperative

2. sing. werde gelobt be praised 2. plur. werdet gelobt be praised 2. sing. or plur. werden Sie gelobt be praised

Present Participle gelobt werdend being praised

Past Subj. I might or should be praised ich würde gelobt du würdest gelobt etc.

Infinitive

gelobt (zu) werden (to) be praised

Past Participle gelobt worden been praised

FORMS CORRESPONDING TO THE COMPOUND FORMS OF THE ACTIVE

Perf. Ind.

I have been praised ich bin gelobt worden du bist gelobt worden etc.

Plup. Ind.

I had been praised ich war gelobt worden du warst gelobt worden etc.

Fut. Ind.

I shall be praised ich werde gelobt werden du wirst gelobt werden etc.

Perf. Subj.

I may have been praised ich sei gelobt worden bu seiest gelobt worden etc.

Plup. Subj.

I might or should have been praised ich wäre gelobt worden bu wärest gelobt worden etc.

Fut. Subj.

I shall be praised ich werde gelobt werden du werdest gelobt werden etc.

Fut. Perf. Ind.

I shall have been praised ich werde gelobt worden sein du wirst gelobt worden sein etc.

Pres. Condit.

I should be praised ich würde gelobt werden bu würdest gelobt werden etc.

Fut. Perf. Subj.

I shall have been praised ich werde gelobt worden sein du werdest gelobt worden sein etc.

Perfect Condit.

I should have been praised ich würde gelobt worden sein du würdest gelobt worden sein etc.

Perfect Infinitive

gelobt worden (zu) sein (to) have been praised

THE MODAL AUXILIARIES AND Wiffen

25. Principal Parts of the Modal Auxiliaries:

| dürfen | durfte | gedurft | be allowed, be permitted; interrogatively: may I; with a negative: must not |
|------------------|------------------|--------------------|--|
| fönnen | fonnte | gekonnt | can, be able, may |
| mögen | mochte | gemocht | may, like to, care to |
| müssen | mußte | gemußt | must, be obliged, be compelled, have to, connot but |
| jollen wollen | follte wollte | gefollt gewollt | shall, ought, am to or am told to will, be willing, want to, intend to, mean to, be on the point of, be about to |

26. Inflection of the Modal Auxiliaries:

SIMPLE FORMS

Present Indicative

| ich) | darf | tann | mag | muβ | foll | will |
|------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------|---------|----------------|
| du | darfft | fannft | magft | mußt | follft | willft |
| er | darf | fann | mag | muß | foll | will |
| wir | dürfen | fönnen | mög en | müssen | sollen | woll en |
| ihr | dürf t | fönnt | mög t | müßt | follt | wollt |
| fie | dürfen | fönn en | mög en | müssen | follen | woll en |
| | | Р | resent Sub | junctive | | |
| iđy | dürfe | fönne | möge | müsse | folle | wolle |
| du | dürf eft | fönneft | mög eft | müsseft | folleft | wolleft |
| er | dürfe | fönne | mög e | müsse | jolle | wolle |

120

| wir ihr fie | dürf en dürf et dürf en | fönnen fönnet fönnen | mög en mög et mög en | mü ssen mü sset müss en | foll en follet follen | woll en woll et woll en |
|---|--|----------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| | | | Past Indic | ative | | |
| ich du | durf te durf teft etc. | fonnte fonnteft etc. | moch te moch teft etc. | muß te muß teft etc. | joll te joll tejt etc. | woll te woll teft etc. |
| | | I | Past Subju | nctive | | |
| ich du | dürf te dürf teft otc. | fönnte fönnteft etc. | möch te möch teft etc. | müß te müß teft etc. | joll te joll teft etc. | woll te woll teft etc. |
| | | | Imperati | ve | | |
| wanting in all but wollen 2. sing. wolle 2. plur. wollet 2. sing. or plur. wollen Present Infinitive, see 25. | | | | | | |
| | | 21000 | | | | |

Present Participle

dürfend könnend mögend mülfend sollend wollend

Past Participle, see 25.

COMPOUND FORMS

Perf. Ind. Perf. Subj. ich habe gedurft, gekonnt otc. ich habe gedurft, gekonnt otc. Plup. Ind. Plup. Subj. ich hatte gedurft, gekonnt etc. ich hätte gedurft, gekonnt etc. Fut. Ind. Fut. Subj. ich werde dürfen, können etc. ich werde dürfen, können etc. Fut. Perf. Ind. Fut. Perf. Subj. ich werde gedurft haben etc. ich werde gedurft haben otc. Pres. Cond. Perf. Condit. ich würde gedurft haben etc. ich würde dürfen, können etc.

Perfect Infinitive gedurft (zu) haben, gekonnt (zu) haben etc. 27. Irregular or Special Forms. (1) The singular of the present indicative, except that of mollen, was originally the past tense of a strong verb, hence no endings in the 1. and 3. persons. When this strong past had acquired present meaning, a new weak past was formed with the etc.

(2) The vowel of the singular of the present indicative is different (except in foller) from that of the plural. The plural has the same vowel as the infinitive.

(3) Dürfen, können, mögen, müssen have no umlaut in the past indicative and past participle. Sollen and wollen have no umlaut anywhere.

(4) Mögen changes g to the in the past indicative, past subjunctive and past participle.

(5) When the perfect or pluperfect is accompanied by the infinitive of another verb, the past participle of the modal auxiliary (geburft, gefonnt etc.) is changed to the infinitive (bürfen, fönnen etc.). Thus, ich habe nicht gehen bürfen (where bürfen stands for geburft and where an infinitive, namely gehen, is actually expressed) means I have not been (or I was not) allowed to go; whereas ich habe nicht geburft (where an infinitive, gehen or other, is understood, but not expressed) corresponds to the colloquial English I have not been (or I was not) allowed to (where to also requires an infinitive to be understood).— Heißen bid, hören hear, helfen help, laffen let and fehen see follow the same construction: ich habe ihn gehen laffen (for gelaffen) I (have) let him go, man hatte mich fommen fehen they had seen me come.

(6) \mathfrak{Zu} , like to in English, is omitted before an infinitive accompanying a modal auxiliary: ich will nach Hause gehen und ars beiten I will go home and work.

28. Wiffen know resembles the modal auxiliaries in the inflection of its simple forms:

| Pres. I | nd. Pres | s. Subj. | Pa | st Ind. | Pas | st Subj. |
|---------|------------------|----------|-----|-----------------|-----|----------|
| ich we | iß ich | wisse | ich | wuß te | ich | wüßte |
| du we | ißt du | wisseft | du | wuß teft | du | wüßteft |
| er we | iß er | misse | er | wußte | er | wüßte |
| wir wi | s fen wir | missen | wir | wuß ben | wir | wüßten |
| ihr wi | ßt ihr | misset | ihr | wußtet | ihr | wüßtet |
| sie wi | fen sie | wiffen | fie | wuß ten | fie | wüßten |

2. sing. wisse

2. plur. wisset

2. sing. or plur. miffen Sie

Present Participle wissend

Present Infinitive (zu) wissen

Past Participle gewußt

The compound forms are made with haben and have none of the irregular constructions and uses of the modal auxiliaries: fut. ind. ich werde wiffen; perf. ind. ich habe gewußt etc. An accompanying infinitive requires zu: er hat es nicht anzufangen gewußt he did not know how to go at it. For wiffen as distinguished from fennen and fönnen see 186.

REFLEXIVE VERBS

29. In German, as in English, transitive verbs are often used with a reflexive pronoun for an object, e.g. er zeigt fich he shows himself, fie zeigt fich she shows herself. But German, unlike English, uses some verbs reflexively though the reflexive pronoun is no longer felt as an object and the verbal idea of the combination has become virtually intransitive, e.g. er freut fich (he gladdens himself, i.e.) he rejoices or is glad. — The inflection of the verb itself is either strong or weak, as the case may be, with haben for an auxiliary. The reflexive pronoun of the 3 person, for both numbers and all genders, is fich (39). For the other persons the corresponding personal pronoun is used, as shown below.

Infinitive

sich (zu) zeigen (to) show one's self sich (zu) freuen (to) rejoice

Present Indicative

| ich zeige mich I show myself | ich freue mich I rejoice |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| du zeigst dich you show yourself | du freust dich you rejoice |
| er zeigt sich he shows himself | er freut sich etc. |
| fie zeigt fich she shows herself | sie freut sich |
| es zeigt sich it shows itself | es freut sich |
| wir zeigen uns we show ourselves | wir freuen uns |
| ihr zeigt euch you show yourselves | ihr freut euch |
| sie zeigen sich they show themselves | sie freuen sich |
| Sie zeigen sich you show yourself | Sie freuen sich |
| or yourselves | |

| zeige dich show yourself | freue dich |] |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|---------|
| zeigt euch show yourselves | freut euch | rejoice |
| zeigen Sie sich show yourself | freuen Sie sich |] |
| or yourselves | | |

Perfect Indicative

| ich habe mich gezeigt | ich habe mich gefreut |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| du haft dich gezeigt | du hast dich gefreut |
| etc. | etc. |

Some reflexive verbs govern the dative. In the inflection of these substitute mir for mich and bir for bich; e.g. ich schmeichle mir *I flatter myself*, du schmeichelst dir you flatter yourself, and, in the 2. sing. imperat., schmeichle dir *flatter yourself*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

30. Impersonal verbs ascribe an action or a state to an indefinite agent or subject, es *it*, or express a verbal idea without reference to a subject. Their inflection is strong or weak, as the case may be, and almost all of them take haben for an auxiliary; thus es regnet *it rains*, es regnete *it rained*, es mürbe regnen *it would rain*, es hat geregnet *it has rained* etc.

Compound Verbs

31. There are two classes of compound verbs: those with inseparable prefixes and those with separable prefixes.

INSEPARABLE COMPOUNDS

32. The Inseparable Prefixes are be, emp, ent, er, ge, ber, ger. Verbs compounded with these have the accent on the stem and are inflected like simple verbs, except that the past participle omits the prefix ge; thus, verste'hen verstand' verstand'en (not "ge= verstanden") understand.

33. Model. Beschreiben beschrieb beschrieben describe

SIMPLE FORMS

| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Subj. | Past Ind. | Past Subj. |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| ich beschreibe | ich beschreibe | ich beschrieb | ich beschriebe |
| du beschreibst | du beschreibest | du beschriebst | du beschriebest |
| etc. | etc. | etc. | etc. |

2. sing. beschreibe

2. plur. beschreibt

2. sing. or plur. beschreiben Sie

Present Participle beschreibend Past Participle beschrieben

Present Infinitive

(zu) beschreiben

COMPOUND FORMS They are made with haben

SEPARABLE COMPOUNDS

34. Separable Prefixes. Among the commonest separable prefixes are:

| ab off | empor up(ward) | vor before, pre- |
|--------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| an on, at | entgegen toward, to meet | vorbei by, past |
| auf up, upon | fest fast, firm | vorüber by, past |
| aus out, from | fort forth, away, on | vorwärts forward, on |
| bei by, to | heim home | weg away, off, from |
| da there | los loose, off | weiter further, on |
| dar there, in view | mit with, along | zu to, toward |
| davon away, along | nach after, for | zurück back |
| ein into | nieder down | zusammen together |

To these add her hither, here, this way, along this way, hin thither, there, that way, along that way and certain compounds of her and hin, as appearing in verbs like

| herabhänge n | hang down (from above, this way) |
|---------------------|--|
| heranfommen | come on, along this way; approach |
| heraufbringen | bring, or carry, up (from below, this way) |
| heraustreten | step out (from within, this way) |
| umherfliegen | fly around, about, this way and that |
| hinabgehen | go down (that way, from up here) |
| hinaufblicken | look up (that way, from below here) |
| hinauswerfen | throw out (that way, from within here) |
| hineintreten | step in (that way, from without here) |

35. Accent and Construction. Separable compounds differ from the inseparable in four points: (1) the prefix has the principal accent; (2) in the present and past (ind. and subj.) and in

the imperative, the prefix is separated from the verb and put at the end of the clause, unless the clause be a dependent one with transposed order, in which case the prefix remains united with the verb: ich fange ein neues Buch an' I am beginning a new book; fange noch kein neues Buch an' don't begin a new book yet; er fagt, er fange ein neues Buch an' he says he is beginning ...; but er sagt, daß er ein neues Buch an'fange he says that he is ...; (3) the ge of the past participle is put between the prefix and the verb: ich habe ein neues Buch an'gefangen I have begun ...; (4) when the infinitive requires zu to, this is put between the prefix and the verb: er bat mich, ein neues Buch an'zufangen he begged me to begin ...

36. Model. Anfangen fing an angefangen begin

SIMPLE FORMS

| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Subj. | Past Ind. | Past Subj. |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| ich funge an | ich fange an | ich fing an | ich finge an |
| du fängst an | du fangest an | du fingst an | du fingest an |
| er fängt an | er fange an | er fing an | er finge an |
| wir fangen an | wir fangen an | wir fingen an | wir fingen an |
| etc. | etc. | etc. | etc. |

Imperative

Present Infinitive

2. sing. fang(e) an

anfangen anzufangen

2. plur. fanat an 2. sing. or plur. fangen Sie an

Present Participle anfangend

Past Participle angefangen

COMPOUND FORMS They are made with haben

37. Prefixes Separable or Inseparable. (1) Durch through, über over, across, um round, about, unter under and wieder again form both separable and inseparable compounds. As a rule, these prefixes are separable when used in a literal sense, i.e. with the meanings given above, and inseparable when used in a derived or figurative sense. This twofold use sometimes has its counterpart in English; thus, from unter under and gehen go are made

VERB INFLECTIONS

| un'tergehen | go un'der | and | unterge'hen | undergo' |
|----------------|-------------|-----|--------------|------------|
| ging un'ter | went un'der | and | unterging' | underwent' |
| un'tergegangen | gone un'der | and | untergan'gen | undergone' |

Some of the commonest compounds with burdh, über, um, unter and wieber are:

SEPARABLE

| durch'dringen ü'berfezen | drang durch' sette ü'ber | ist durch'gedrungen ü'bergeset | press through ferry over |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| um'bringen | brachte um' | um'gebracht | kill, murder |
| um'kehren | kehrte um | um'gekehrt | turn round |
| um'kommen um'sehen rofl. | fam um' | ist um'gekommen um'gesehen | perish look round, back |
| | brachte wie'der | | bring back |
| wie'derholen | holte wie'der | wie'dergeholt | fetch back |
| wie'derkommen wie'dersehen | łam wie'der jah wie'der | ist wie'dergekommen wie'dergesehen | come again, return see or meet again |

INSEPARABLE

| iiberge'ben iibergab' iiberge'ben iiberlaf'fen iiberle'gen iiberleg'te iiberlegt' iiberle'gen iiberleg'te iiberlegt' iiberneh'men iiberrafd'te iiberrafd'te iiberrafd'te iiberge'hen iiberfe'hen iiberfe'hen iibergeg'te iiberfe'hen iibergeg'te iiberfe'hen iibergeg'te iibergegt' iibergegen iibergegen<th>urprise, attack eliver up, surrender urn over to, make over to msider, think over uke upon one's self urprise verlook canslate mvince urround uterrupt ntertain, support ndertake iscriminate, distinguish upport, aid uvestigate, examine epeat</th> | urprise, attack eliver up, surrender urn over to, make over to msider, think over uke upon one's self urprise verlook canslate mvince urround uterrupt ntertain, support ndertake iscriminate, distinguish upport, aid uvestigate, examine epeat |
|---|--|
|---|--|

(2) With the prefixes in (1) above are sometimes classed the

following: hinter behind, miß amiss, mis-, voll fully, wider against, re-. Their commonest compounds, however, are inseparable:

| hinterlaj'sen | hinterließ' | hinterlas'sen | leave behind, bequeath |
|--------------------|--------------|----------------|------------------------|
| mißbrau'chen | mißbrauch'te | mißbraucht' | misuse, abuse |
| vollbrin'gen | vollbrach'te | vollbracht | accomplish, finish |
| vollen'den | vollen'dete | vollen'det | complete, finish |
| widerse'tzen refl. | widersets'te | widersett | resist, oppose |
| widerspre'chen | widersprach' | widerspro'chen | gainsay, contradict |
| widerste'hen | widerstand' | widerstan'den | resist, withstand |

II. ODD OR UNCLASSIFIED INFLECTIONS

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

SECOND PERSON

| SINGULAR | SINGULAR | SING. AND PLUR |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| N. ich I | du thou, you | Sie you |
| G. meiner, mein of me | deiner, dein of thee, of you | Jhrer of you |
| D. mir to me | dir to thee, to you | Ihnen to you |
| A. mich <i>me</i> | bich thee, you | Sie you |

| PLURAI | | PL | JU | R. | A1 | C |
|--------|--|----|----|----|----|---|
|--------|--|----|----|----|----|---|

| N. mir we | ihr <i>ye</i> , you |
|----------------|---------------------|
| G. unser of us | euer of you |
| D. uns to us | euch to you |
| A. uns us | euch you |

38. FIRST PERSON

PLURAL

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR

| | masc. | fem. | neut. |
|----|---------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| N. | er he | fie she | e 8 i t |
| G. | seiner, sein of him | ihrer of her | seiner, sein of it |
| D. | ihm to him | ihr to her | ihm to it |
| A. | ihn him | fie her | e8 it |

THIRD PERSON PLURAL

| | m. f. n. |
|----|---------------|
| N. | jie they |
| G. | ihrer of them |
| D. | ihnen to them |
| A. | sie them |

128

REFLEXIVE, RECIPROCAL AND INTENSIVE PRONOUNS

39. Reflexive Pronouns. German has no special forms for the first and second persons of the reflexive pronoun, i. e. for myself, thyself, yourself and yourselves, but uses the personal pronouns instead. Nor has it more than one form, namely fid, for both numbers and all genders of the third person, i. e. for himself, herself, itself and themselves, or for yourself and yourselves when referring to Site. See the inflection of reflexive verbs, 29. — After prepositions fid, often corresponds to the personal pronoun in English: er hat Gelb bei fid, he has money with him, fie legte bas Buch por fich she laid the book before her.

40. The Reciprocal Pronoun is the indeclinable einander; but where no ambiguity can arise, une, euch and fich are likewise used in a reciprocal sense: wir fahen einander or une (acc.) we saw each other or one another; wir begegneten einander or une (dat.) we met each other or one another; ihr feht einander or euch you see each other or one another; fie begegnen einander or fich they meet each other or one another.

41. The Intensive or Emphatic Pronoun is the indeclinable felbst (or selber): ich selbst war da *I myself was there*, Sie haben es selbst getan you did it yourself or yourselves, der Kaiser selbst kommandierte die Truppen the emperor himself commanded the troops, sie schlägt sich selbst skes kerself.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUN Der

42. Der, as demonstrative pronoun meaning that, that one, he, she, it etc., and ber, as relative pronoun meaning who, which, that, are inflected alike :

| SINGULAR | | | | PLURAL |
|-----------|--------|-------|--------|--------|
| | m. | f. | n. | m.f.n. |
| N. | ber | die | das | die |
| G. | dessen | deren | dessen | deren |
| D. | dem | der | dem | denen |
| А. | den | die | das | die |

The gen. sing. masc. and neut. of the demonstrative is sometimes bee, as in beswegen on that account; the gen. plur. is berer before a relative: berer, bir noch fommen follen of those who are yet to come.

THE INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS Wer and Was

43. Wer, as interrogative pronoun meaning who, and wer, as relative pronoun meaning whoever or he who, are inflected alike. Was, as interrogative pronoun meaning what, and was, as relative pronoun meaning whatever or that which, are also inflected alike. Both wer and was have no plural, and was lacks also the dative.

| N. | wer who | was what |
|----|--------------|----------------|
| G. | wessen whose | wessen of what |
| D. | wem to whom | wanting |
| A. | wen whom | was what |

The gen. is sometimes wee, especially in compounds, as weehalb? for what reason? why?

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

44. Sebermann everybody, jemand somebody and niemand nobody form the genitives jedermanns, jemandes and niemandes or niemands. For the dative and accusative, the nominative form is used, but jemand and niemand have also a dative in em or en and an accusative in en.

III. COMPLETE STRONG INFLECTION

45. The words below are inflected alike; only the definite article ber the (as emphatic demonstrative adjective meaning that) differs slightly from the rest in having it where the others have e and, in two cases (nom. acc. sing. neut.), as where the others have es. — The last five words occur more frequently in the plural than in the singular.

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR

| m. | f. | n. | |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| der | die | dað | the (that) |
| dief er | dies e | dief es | this |
| jed er | jed e | jed es | each, every, everybody |
| jen er | jene | jen es | that, that one, yon |
| mancher | manche | manches | many a, many a on e |
| folch er | folche | folches | such, such a one |
| welch er | welch e | welch es | which, what, who |
| aller | alle | alles | all |
| ander er | ander e | ander es | other, different |
| beid er | beid e | beid es | both, two |
| einig er | einig e | cinig es | some, a few |
| mehrer er | mehrer e | mehrer es | several |
| viel er | viele | viel es | much, many |
| wenig er | wenig e | wenig es | little, a little, few |

| 46 | . Inf | lectio | n of | der : | | | |
|-----------|--------|--------|---------------|----------------|-----------|-----------|---------------|
| | | 81 | NGUL | AR | | PLURAL | |
| | m. | f. | n. | | | m. f. n. | |
| N. | der | die | dað | the (th | at) | die the | (those) |
| G. | deð | der | deð | of the | (of that) | der of t | he (of those) |
| D. | dem | der | dem | to the | (to that) | den to t | he (to those) |
| A. | den | die | dað | the (th | at) | die the | (those) |
| 47. | Inf | lectio | n of | dieser, je | der etc.: | | |
| | | 8 | INGUI | LAR | | PLURAL | |
| | m. | | f. | n. | | m. f. n. | |
| N. | diesen | : di | efe | dieses | this | diese the | 288 |
| G. | dieses | 3 di | ef er | dies es | of this | dieser of | f these |
| D. | diesen | n di | ief er | diesem | to this | diesen to | o these |
| A. | diefer | | eje | dieses | | diese the | |

48. The endings of biefer, jeber etc., as also those of ber, are called the "strong" endings, and this mode of inflection is called the "complete" strong inflection, in distinction from the "defective" strong inflection below.

49. Common contractions of the definite article with preceding prepositions are

| am = an dem at the | aufs — auf das upon the |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| im = in dem in the | durchs = durch das through the |
| vom = von dem of the, from the | fürs=für das for the |
| zum = zu dem to the | ins — in das into the |
| beim = bei bem at the | vors = vor das before the |
| ans = an das to the, towards the | zur = zu der to the |

A common contraction of the nom. or acc. sing. neuter biefes is bies.

IV. DEFECTIVE STRONG INFLECTION

50. The words below are inflected like biefer, jeber etc., that is, with strong endings (48); only the nominative singular masculine and the nominative and accusative singular neuter are without ending. Their inflection is therefore called the "defective" strong inflection, in distinction from the "complete" strong inflection above. — The indefinite article ein a, an (as emphatic numeral adjective meaning one) has no plural.

| | NOMINATIVE | SINGULAR | |
|-------|---------------|----------|---------------|
| masc. | fem. | neut. | |
| ein | ein e | ein | a, an (one) |
| fein | teine | fein | no |
| mein | mein e | mein | my |
| dein | dein e | dein | thy, your |
| fein | seine | fein | his |
| ihr | ihre | ihr | he r |
| fein | feine | fein | its |
| unser | unsere 1 | unser | our |
| euer | euere 1 | euer | your |
| ihr | ihr e | ihr | the ir |
| Ihr | Ihre | Ihr | your |

¹ When inflected, unfer and euer often drop the *e* before the *r* of the stem or the *e* of the endings em and en, e. g. unfre, eurer, unfres, unfrem or unferm, eurem or euerm.

51. Inflection of ein:

| | | SIN | GULAR | |
|----|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| | m. | f. | n. | |
| N. | ein | eine | ein | a (one) |
| G. | ein es | ein er | eines | of a (of one) |
| D. | ein em | ein er | ein em | to a (to one) |
| A. | ein en | eine | ein | a (one) |

52. Inflection of fein:

| SINGULAR | | | | PLURAL | | |
|----------|----------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------------|-------|
| | m. | f. | n. | | m.f.n. | • |
| N. | tein | feine | f ein | no | feine | no |
| G. | teines | fein er | keines | of no | feiner | of no |
| D. | keinem | feiner | teinem | to no | feinen | to no |
| A. | kein en | fein e | f ein | no | f ein e | no |

V. NOUN INFLECTIONS

53. Nouns are divided into four classes, according to the form of the nominative plural, as compared with the nominative singular.

| I | Nom. pl. $=$ nom. sing., sometimes | modify- |
|-----|--|-------------------------|
| II | Nom. pl. = nom. sing. $+ e$, usually | ing |
| III | Nom. pl. = nom. sing. $+ er$, always | the |
| IV | Nom. pl. = nom. sing. $+ \mathbf{n}$ or en , never | stem-vowel ¹ |

¹ Only nouns in tum (61) modify the vowel of this suffix instead.

Compound nouns mostly have the inflection (as also the gender) of the final member.

54. The Oblique Cases of the Singular. 1. Feminines of all Classes have the oblique cases (gen., dat., acc.) like the nominative.

2. Masculines and neuters of Classes I-III take es or s in the genitive, e or no ending in the dative, and have the accusative like the nominative.

Those in unaccented e, el, en, er, then or lein add \mathfrak{s} for the gen. and no ending for the dat.; those in an s-sound, $\mathfrak{e}\mathfrak{s}$ for the gen. and \mathfrak{e} or no ending for the dat.; all others, if monosyllabic, prefer $\mathfrak{e}\mathfrak{s}$ in the gen. and \mathfrak{e} in the dat., or, if polysyllabic, \mathfrak{s} in the gen. and no ending in the dative. After prepositions, however, and before vowels, even monosyllables are apt to reject the dative- \mathfrak{e} .

3. Masculines (there are no neuters) of Class IV form the oblique cases of the singular like the nominative plural.

55. The Oblique Cases of the Plural, in all Classes, are like the nominative plural, except that the dative adds n if the nominative does not end in n.

CLASS I

56. Here belong: 1. All nouns with the suffixes then and lein — these are neuter diminutives.

2. All masculines and neuters in el, en and er.

The neuters in en (sometimes only n) include all infinitives used as nouns, e. g. bas \mathfrak{L} efen reading; they seldom occur in the plural.

3. All neuters in e with the prefix Se.

4. Only two feminines: die Mutter mother and die Tochter daughter.

There are also only two monosyllables in Class I: bas Sein being, bas Tun doings, conduct, both infinitive nouns.

57. Models. 1. With vowel unchanged in the plural: ber Wagen wagon, das Gebäu' de building, das Mädchen girl.

| N. | der | Wagen | das | Gebäu' de | das | Mädchen |
|----|-----|--------|-----|--------------------|-----|----------|
| G. | des | Bagens | des | Gebäu' de s | des | Mädchens |
| D. | dem | Wagen | dem | Gebäu' de | dem | Mädchen |
| A. | den | Wagen | das | Gebäu' de | das | Mädchen |

| N. | die | Wagen | die | Gebäu' de | die | Mädchen |
|----|-----|-------|-----|--------------------|-----|---------|
| G. | der | Wagen | ber | Gebäu' de | ber | Mädchen |
| D. | den | Wagen | den | Gebäu' de n | den | Mädchen |
| A. | die | Wagen | die | Gebäu' de | die | Mädchen |

2. With vowel modified in the plural: der Garten garden, der Bater father, die Mutter mother.

| N. | der | Garten | der | Bater | die | Mutter |
|-----------------|------------|------------------|------------|----------------|--------------------|------------------|
| G. | des | Gartens | des | Bater s | der | Mutter |
| D. | dem | Garten | dem | Bater | der | Mutter |
| А. | den | Garten | den | Bater | die | Mutter |
| | | | | | | |
| N. | die | Gärten | die | Bäter | die | Mütter |
| N. G. | die der | Gärten Gärten | die der | Bäter Bäter | di e der | Mütter Mütter |
| | | 0 | | • | | |

58. The following masculines are declined like \mathfrak{M} agen, except that most of them regularly drop the \mathfrak{n} of the nominative singular:

| der Friede(n) peace | der Name name |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| der Gedanke thought | der Same(n) seed |
| der Glaube faith | der Schade(n) damage |
| der Haufe(n) heap, pile | der Wille will |
| N. der Name | die Namen |
| G. des Namens | der Namen |
| D. dem Namen | den Namen |
| A. den Namen | die Namen |

Der Felsen or der Fels rock is declined as follows: gen. Felsens or Felsen; dat. acc. Felsen or Fels; plur. Felsen.

CLASS II

59. Here belong: 1. All nouns with the suffixes id, ig, ing and ling — these are masculine and without change of vowel in the plural.

2. All nouns in nis and fal — most of these are neuter, some feminine, and all without change of vowel in the plural.

3. The majority of monosyllabic nouns — most of these are masculine and usually modified in the plural; 35 are feminine,

also modified; and 40 are neuter, not modified. Many can easily be recognized as masculines by their final letters; e. g.

- g: der Weg way, der Gang gait, der Krug jug, der Tag day, der Berg mountain (but die Burg castle, Cl. IV)
- I: der Fall fall, case, der Ball ball, der Zoll toll, inch
- m(m): der Turm tower, der Baum tree, der Kamm comb (but das Ramm lamb, Cl. III)
- **pf**: der Topf *pot*, der Kopf *head*, der Kampf *fight*, der Stumpf *stump*, der Dampf *steam*, *vapor*
- sch: der Tisch table, der Frosch frog, der Bunsch wish (but der Mensch man, Cl. IV)
- f: der Spaß joke, der Spieß spear, der Kuß kiss (but das Schloß castle, Cl. III)
- \$: der Platz place, der Klotz log, der Blitz flash

60. Models. 1. With vowel modified in the plural: ber Ropf head, der Fluß river, die Hand hand.

| N. | der | Ropf | der | Fluß | die | Hand |
|----------|-----|--------------------------------|-----|------------------|-----|--------------------------------|
| G. | des | Ropfes | des | Flusses | der | Hand |
| D. | dem | Ropfe | dem | Flusse | der | Hand |
| A. | den | Ropf | den | Fluß | die | Hand |
| | | | | | | |
| N. | die | Köpfe | die | Flüsse | die | Händ e |
| N. G. | | Röpf e Röpf e | | Flüffe Flüffe | | Händ e Händ e |
| G. | der | • • | der | 0 11 | der | 6 |

2. With vowel unchanged in the plural: der Tag day, der Mo'nat month, das Jahr year, das Geheim'nis secret.

| N. | der | Tag | der | Mo'nat | das | Jahr |
|----|-----|--------------|-----|---------------------|-----|------------------------|
| G. | des | Tages | des | Mo' nats | des | Jahres |
| D. | dem | Tage | dem | Mo' nat | dem | Jahre |
| A. | den | Tag | den | Mo' nat | daø | Jahr |
| | | | | | | |
| N. | die | Tage | die | Mo'nat e | die | Jahre |
| | | Tage Tage | | Mo'nate Mo' nate | | Jahr e Jahre |
| G. | der | | der | | der | • / |

Nouns in nis double the s before endings.

| N. | das | Geheim' nis | N. | die | Geheim'niffe |
|----|-----|----------------|----|-----|----------------|
| G. | des | Geheim' niffes | G. | der | Geheim' niffe |
| D. | dem | Geheim' nis | D. | den | Geheim' niffen |
| A. | das | Geheim' nis | A. | die | Geheim' niffe |

CLASS III

61. Here belong: 1. All nouns with the suffix tum (plur. tümer) — these, with the exception of der Jrrtum error and der Reichtum wealth, are neuter.

2. About 50 monosyllabic neuters, also a few neuters with the prefix (Se, but without the suffix e (56. 3), as das Geficht face.

3. About a dozen monosyllabic masculines.

There are no feminines in Class III.

62. Models. Das Haus house, der Mann man, das Her'zogtum dukedom.

| N. | das | Haus | der | Mann | das | Her' zogtum |
|----|-----|-----------------|-----|-----------------|-----|-----------------------|
| G. | des | Hauses . | des | Mannes | des | Her' zogtums |
| D. | dem | Hause | dem | Manne | dem | Her' zogtum |
| A. | das | Haus | den | Mann | das | Her' zogtum |
| N. | die | Häus er | die | Männ er | die | Her' zogtüm er |
| G | der | Häuser | der | Männer | der | Her' zogtüm er |
| D. | den | Häus ern | den | Männ ern | den | Her' zogtümern |
| A | die | Häu ser | die | Männer | die | Her' zogtüm er |

CLASS IV

63. Here belong: 1. All nouns of more than one syllable in ei, erei, heit, in, feit, ichaft and ung, also those with the foreign suffixes age, ie, ion and tät—all these are feminines.

2. All other feminines of more than one syllable (except bie Mutter, bie Tochter, 56. 4, and a few in nis or fal, 59. 2) — among them are many ending in e.

3. About 60 feminines of one syllable

4. About 20 masculines of one syllable.

5. All masculines of more than one syllable in e and many

foreign masculines of more than one syllable with the accent on the last, e. g. der Student' student.

There are no neuters in Class IV.

Nouns in e, el or er add n for inflection, others en $(53. \mathbf{IV})$. •But der Herr gentleman adds only n in the singular : des, dem, den Herrn (the plural is regular : die, der, den, die Herren), and nouns in in double the n before endings (see Rönigin below).

64. Models. 1. Feminines: die Frau woman, die Blume *flower*, die Königin *queen*.

| N. | die | Frau | die | Blume | die | Kō'nigin |
|----|-----|----------------|-----|----------------|-----|----------------------|
| G. | der | Frau | der | Blume | der | Kö' nigin |
| D. | der | Frau | der | Blume | der | Kö'nigin |
| A. | die | Frau | die | Blume | die | Rö' nigin |
| N. | die | Frau en | die | Blumen | die | Kö' niginn en |
| G. | der | Frau en | der | Blume n | der | Kð niginn en |
| D. | den | Frau en | den | Blume n | den | Kö' niginn en |
| A. | die | Frauen | die | Blumen | die | Kö' niginn en |

2. Masculines : der Mensch man, human being, der Rnabe boy.

| N. | der | Mensch | der | Anabe |
|-------------|-----|------------------|-----|----------------|
| G. | des | Menschen | des | Anabe n |
| D. - | dem | Menschen | dem | Anabe n |
| A. | den | Menschen | den | Anabe n |
| N. | die | Mensch en | die | Anaben |
| G. | der | Menschen | der | Knabe n |
| D. | den | Menschen | den | Anabe n |
| A. | die | Menschen | die | Anabe n |

65. Mixed Nouns. The following masculines and neuters form the singular after Classes I-III (54. 2); the plural after Class IV (53. IV).

| der | Bauer peasant | das Auge eye |
|-----|------------------|-------------------------|
| der | Dorn thorn | das Bett bed |
| der | Nachbar neighbor | das Ende end |
| der | Schmerz pain | das Ohr ear |
| der | See lake | der Doktor doctor |
| der | Staat state | der Professor professor |
| der | Strahl ray | and others in unac- |
| der | Better cousir | cented or. |

| N. | der | Staat | das | Auge | der | Doktor |
|----------|------------|------------------------------------|------------|--------------------------------|-----|--|
| G. | des | Staat es | des | Auges | des | Dol'tors |
| D. | dem | Staate | dem | Auge | dem | Doktor |
| A. | den | Staat | das | Auge | den | Doktor |
| | | | | | | |
| N. | die | Staat en | die | Augen | die | Dokto'ren |
| N. G. | die der | Staat en Staat en | die der | Aug en Auge n | | Dokto'r en Dokto'r en |
| | | Staaten | | • | der | |

Bauer and Nachbar often form a singular after Class IV : bes, bem, ben Bauern or Nachbarn. — See usually forms the plural Seen, instead of Seeen. — Schmerz sometimes forms the gen. sing. Schmerzens, instead of Schmerzes. — Das Herz *heart* is declined as follows : bes Herzens, bem Herzen, das Herz; bie, ber, ben, die Herzen.

66. Proper Names. Most names of persons, when not preceded by an article, add 8 for the genitive: Rarl's Buch Charles's book, Schiller's Werke Schiller's works, Heines Rieib Helen's dress. But masculines ending in an s-sound add ens or an apostrophe, the latter mostly when they are family names: Frigens Bferb Fred's horse, Bof' Berte the works of Voss.

67. A personal name preceded by an article adds no ending: bie Werke eines Schüller the works of a S., die Briefe des Horaz the epistles of Horace, die Werke des jungen Schüller the works of the youthful S. — Combinations like little Fred or long John require the definite article in German: der Neine Fritz, der lange Johann.

68. A name after a title with preceding article is left unvaried : ber Tob bes Kaisers Bilhelm the death of Emperor William, das Haus des Broseffors Schmidt or des Herrn Schmidt the house of Professor or Mr. Smith. A name after a title without preceding article takes the genitive ending, and the title, except Herr, is then unvaried : Raiser Bilhelms Tod, Proseffor Schmidts Haus, but Herrn Schmidts Haus.

69. Names of countries and places form a genitive in 8, except those ending in 8; with these von of is used: die Flüffe Frankreichs or Frankreichs Flüffe the rivers of France, die Straßen Berlins the streets of Berlin, but die Straßen von Paris. — They are neuter and take an article only if they are modified: das ganze Deutschland all Germany, das schore Paris beautiful Paris. — Two important exceptions are die Schweiz Switzerland and die Türkei' Turkey; these always have the article: die Kantone der Schweiz the cantons of Switzerland.

70. The names of the months, which are masculine and require the definite article, are now quite commonly used without a genitive-s: in ben erften Lagen bes April (or Aprils) in the first days of April. In certain phrases the

article or both article and genitive-s are omitted : seit April since A.; er sam Ansang April, und sie sam Ende Mai he came in the beginning of A. and she at the end of May.

VI. DOUBLE INFLECTION: STRONG AND WEAK

71. Ordinary, or descriptive, adjectives are not inflected

1. when used predicatively : das Haus ift alt, und die Fenster find klein the house is old and the windows are small;

2. when used appositively : ein Haus, groß und schön a house, large and handsome ;

3. when used adverbially : fie fingt gut she sings well;

4. rarely also when used attributively (in poetry or in set phrases, and mostly before neuter nouns in the nom. or acc. sing.) : fein sieghaft Banner his victorious banner, ein närrisch Ding a droll thing.

72. Adjectives in er from names of places are never inflected : er ging auf bie Leipziger Meffe he went to the fair at Leipzig; nor are ganz and hab inflected when used without article before neuter geographical names: ganz England all England, burch halb Berlin through half of Berlin.

73. Uninflected are also the possessive adjectives when used predicatively, namely :

| mein | mine | unser | ours |
|------|----------------------|-------|---------------|
| dein | thine, you rs | euer | you rs |
| jein | his | ihr | theirs |
| ihr | hers | Ihr | yours |
| jein | its | • | - |

Examples: das Haus ist mein the house is mine; der Sieg und die Ehre sind unser the victory and the honor are ours; dein ist das Reich und die Kraft und die Herrlichkeit thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory.

DOUBLE INFLECTION OF ORDINARY OR DESCRIPTIVE Adjectives

74. Principle of Inflection. When used attributively, the ordinary, or descriptive, adjective takes the strong endings (48), unless it is preceded by a pronominal or numeral modifier which itself has a strong ending. It then takes a simpler set of endings, called the "weak," namely e in the nominative singular of all genders, as also in the accusative singular of the feminine and neuter, and en in all other forms.

÷

١.

140 AN ABSTRACT OF GERMAN GRAMMAR

The two sets of endings in full are

| | STRONG ENDINGS | | | | | WEA | K EN | DING | S |
|----|----------------|-------|----|----------|----|-----|-------|------|----------|
| | | SING. | | PLUR. | | | SING. | | PLUR. |
| | m. | f. | n. | m. f. n. | | m. | f. | n. | m. f. n. |
| N, | er | e | eø | e | N. | e | e | e | en |
| G. | es | er | eø | er | G | en | en | en | en |
| D. | em | er | em | en | D. | en | en | en | en |
| A. | en | e | eø | e | A. | en | e | e | en |

In four forms — acc. sing. masc.; nom. and acc. sing. fem.; dat. plur. — the weak endings are identical with the strong and the distinction is one in name only. For these four forms the ending is printed only once in the following

76. Combination of Strong and Weak Endings

| SINGULAR | | | | | PLU | RAL | | |
|----------|----|----------|----|------------|------|-----------|----|----|
| • | m | m. f. n. | | • | m. 1 | . n. | | |
| | 8. | w. | 8. | w . | 8. | w. | 8. | w. |
| N. | er | e | | e | eø | e | e | en |
| G. | eø | en | er | en | eø | en | er | en |
| D. | em | en | er | en | em | en | (| en |
| A. | e | n | | e | eø | e | e | en |

77. Models.

75.

STRONG

The adjective is not preceded by any pronominal and therefore has strong endings throughout

good n

N. guter

G. gutes

N. gute

gutem

guten

guter

auten

gute

D.

Α.

G.

D.

A.

| | emangs anoughout | |
|-------------|----------------------------------|----|
| na n | this or the good man | |
| Mann | dieser or der gute Mann | |
| Mannes | biefes or des guten Manne | 8 |
| Manne | diesem or dem guten Manne | |
| Mann | diesen or den guten Mann | |
| Männer | diese or die gut en Männe | r |
| Männer | diefer or der guten Männe | r |
| Männern | biefen or den guten Männe | rn |
| Männer | diese or die guten Männe | r |

WEAK

The adjective is preceded by a pronominal with strong endings throughout and therefore has weak endings throughout

| | good wa | ma n | this | or | the g | ood wa | oma n |
|----------------------------|--|---|---|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|---|
| N. | gute | Frau | diese | or | die | gute | Frau |
| G. | guter | Frau | dieser | or | der | gut en | Frau |
| D. | gut er | Frau | dieser | \mathbf{or} | der | gut en | Frau |
| A. | gute | Frau | diese | \mathbf{or} | die | gute | Frau |
| N. | gute | Frauen | diese | or | die | gut en | Frauen |
| G. | guter | Frauen | dieser | or | der | guten | Frauen |
| D, | guten | Frauen | diesen | or | den | guten | Frauen |
| A . | gute | Frauen | diese | or | die | guten | Frauen |
| | | | | | | | |
| g | ood chil | d | this | or | the g | ood ch | ild |
| <i>g</i> N. | ood chil gut es | d Rind | <i>this</i> diefes ¹ | | • | ood ch gute | <i>ild</i> Rind |
| | | | | or | • | | |
| N. | gutes | Rind | dieses 1 | or or | das des | gute | Kind |
| N. G. | gutes gutes | Rind Rindes | dieses 1 dieses | or or or | das des | gute gut en | Rind Rindes |
| N. G. D. | gutes gutes gutem | Rind Rindes Rinde | diefes 1 diefes diefem | or or or or | da8 de8 dem | gute guten guten gute | Aind Ainde s Ainde |
| N. G. D. A. | gutes gutes gutem gutes | Rind Rindes Rinde Rind | diefes ¹ diefes diefem diefes ¹ | or or or or | das des dem das | gute guten guten gute guten | Rind Aindes Rinde Aind |
| N. G. D. A. N. | gutes gutes gutem gutes gute | Rind Rindes Rinde Rind Rinder | diefes ¹ diefes diefem diefes ¹ diefe | or or or or or or | da8 de8 dem da8 die | gute guten guten gute guten guten | Kind Kindes Kinde Kind Kinder |

¹The shortening of the nom. and acc. sing. neut. diejes into dies does not affect the ending of the adjective : dies gute Kind, dies alte Haus.

78. Additional examples, including some with more than one ordinary adjective:

| STRONG | WEAK |
|---|---|
| altes Weib old woman | welches alte Beib? which old woman? |
| treue Freunde faithful friends | alle treuen Freunde all faithful friends |
| das Wort treu er Freunde ths word of faithful friends | das Bort vieler or mehrerer treuen Freunde the word of many or several faithful friends |
| schlechtes Geld bad money | alles schlechte Geld all bad money |
| fleißige Schüler diligent students | manche fleißig en Schüler many diligent students |
| frisches Obst fresh fruit | einiges frijche Obst some fresh fruit |

142 AN ABSTRACT OF GERMAN GRAMMAR

| aus großer Not from great dis- | aus jener großen Not from that |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| tress | great distress |
| guter, alter Mann good old man | jeder gute, alte Mann every good old man |
| flares, faltes Baffer clear, cold | das flare, falte Baffer the clear, |
| water | cold water |
| in flarem, kaltem Wasser in | in diefem flaren, falten Baffer |
| clear, cold water | in this clear, cold water |

79. Further Applications of the Principle. According to 74, descriptive adjectives must take the strong endings (not only when they are not preceded by any modifier at all, as in the left half of the examples of 77 and 78, but also) after all modifiers, pronominal or other, which are themselves without these strong endings; hence after the following groups of words or forms:

I. after the nom. sing. masc. and the nom. and acc. sing. neuter of the indefinite article and other words of its group (50);

II. after manch, fold, welch, viel and wenig — shortened forms which are often used instead of the full forms (45), especially before ordinary adjectives;

| etwas some | genug enough |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| mehr more | lauter sheer, nothing but |
| weniger less | zwei <i>two</i> |
| was für (133) what kind of, what | drei thres |
| allerlei all kinds of | vier four, and other undeclined |
| vielerlei many kinds of | cardinals. |
| mancherlei many kinds of | |

80. Examples of Group I:

TTT after

This is often called the mixed adjective declension because, as shown below, both strong and weak forms occur in the same paradigm of the masculine and the neuter, though the feminine has none but weak forms.

| | STRONG | | WEAK | |
|------------|-----------------|----------------|-------|--------|
| | no good | l man | | |
| N. | kein guter Mann | | | |
| G. | ₩ → | f eines | guten | Mannes |
| D. | ₩ → | feinem | guten | Manne |
| A . | ** | keinen | guten | Mann |

| 77 | — . | ¥ | m |
|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| N | | - | Männer |
| G. | | | Männer |
| D. | ≌ > | • | Männern |
| A . | ≝-≻ | keine guten | • Männer |
| | no good u | oman | |
| N. | ≅→ | keine gute | Frau |
| G. | ≣-> | feiner guten | Frau |
| D. | | | Frau |
| А. | ₩-> | keine gute | Frau |
| N. | ₩→ | keine guten | Frauen |
| G. | ₩ → | keiner guten | Frauen |
| D. | ₩→ | keinen guten | Frauen |
| А. | ₩ → | keine guten | Frauen |
| | no good o | child | , |
| N. 1 | tein gutes Kind | | |
| G. | -> | feines guten | Rindes |
| D. | ₩ → | feinem guten | |
| A. 1 | lein gutes Kind | U | |
| N. | ≅~> | feine guten | Rinder |
| · G. | ₩ → | feiner guten | Kinder |
| D. | ₩ ->- | keinen guten | Kindern |
| А. | ≝→ | feine guten | Kinder |
| Similarly : | | | |
| STI | RONG | WEAL | Σ. |
| | our or her (their) g | good old f athe | r |
| N. unser or ihr g | | | • |
| G. ⇒ → | u | nseres or thres | guten alten Baters |
| | etc. | | |
| | your old | house | |
| N. euer or 3hr | altes Haus | | |
| G. <u>⇒</u> → | | ures or <i><i>Shres</i></i> | alten Hauses |
| | etc. | | <u> </u> |
| et Framela | of Crowns IT on | a TTT. | , |
| - | s of Groups II an | | |
| STRO | | | EAK Salsad manus a |
| | 50ldat <i>many</i> a n | | Soloat many a |
| brave soldier | | brave soldier | |

144 AN ABSTRACT OF GERMAN GRAMMAR

welch große Augen what large eyes

viel reifes Obst much ripe fruit

- mit solch schlechter Milch with such poor milk
 - mit etwas faltem Baffer with some cold water
 - ich sah zwei ganz kleine, aber hübiche Bögel I saw two very small, but pretty birds
 - mehr schlechte Bücher more bad books
 - allerlei bunte Blumen all sorts of gay flowers
 - lauter dummes Geschwätz nothing but foolish talk
 - mit was für schlechter (dat. gov. by mit, 133) Tinte er schreibt! with what poor ink he writes!

82. Sold and weld are also the regular (shortened) forms before the indefinite article : folch ein Mann such a man, welch ein Mann! what a man ! --Similarly all is the regular (shortened) form before the definite article and before possessive adjectives : all ber Glanz all the splendor, all mein Glück all my happiness.

83. Exceptions to the Principle. Adjectives before a genitive singular in \$ of masculine or neuter nouns, not preceded by a pronominal with strong ending, have the weak ending en more often than the strong es.* In a few phrases and contractions one form prevails to the exclusion of the other :

* Applies to comparatives and superlatives also.

| STRONG | WEAK |
|-----------------------------|---|
| geradeswegs straightway | ein Trunk klaren, kalten Wassers a drink |
| feineswegs by no means | of clear, cold water |
| | eine Ladung rauchlosen Pulvers a cargo of smokeless powder |
| | jedenfalls in any case |
| feinesfalls on no account | feinenfalls on no account |
| ftehendes Fußes immediately | ftehenden Fußes immediately |

- welche großen Augen what large eyes
- vieles reife Obst (139) much ripe fruit
- mit solcher schlechten Milch with such poor milk
- in dem schon etwas kalten Baffer in the water which by that time was rather cold
- als ich die zwei ganz kleinen, aber hübschen Bögel sah when I saw etc.

84. After the nominatives and accusatives plural andere, einige, mehrere, viele, wenige (sometimes also after manche, folche), adjectives usually take the strong ending instead of the weak (that is andere, einige etc. are treated like ordinary or descriptive adjectives, 78)*:

* Applies to comparatives and superlatives also.

WEAK

strong andere ehrliche Leute other honest people wenige or einige hübsche Bögel few or some pretty birds

85. Adjectives preceded by personal pronouns should have strong endings throughout (79), but in the dative singular and the nominative (less often in the acc.) plural the weak endings are at least as common as the strong:

| | STR | ONG | | WI | AK |
|-----|-------|-------------------|------|---------------|-----------|
| | (arn | 1 em Manne | or | armen | Manne |
| mir | { arm | | or | armen | Frau |
| | larn | n em Kinde | or | armen | Kinde |
| wir | (arn | n e Männe | r or | arm en | Männer |
| or | { arn | 1 e Frauen | or | armen | Frauen |
| uns | Larn | 1 e Kinder | or | armen | Kinder |

S6. Change of Stem before Endings. Adjectives in e drop this e before endings: weife wise — weifer, weifer, weifes etc.

Adjectives in unaccented el, en, er often drop the e of these syllables before endings or (those in el and er) the e of the endings em, en (50¹): ebel noble ebler, eble, eblem or ebelm, eblen or ebeln; heiter *cheerful* - heitres, heitrem or heiterm; offen open - offner, offnes, offnes, offnem, offnen.

hoch drops c before endings : ein hoher Berg a high mountain.

DOUBLE INFLECTION OF CERTAIN PRONOMINALS AND INDEFINITE NUMERALS

87. The principle of double inflection applies to all those pronominals and indefinite numerals which, like descriptive adjectives, can be used both with and without the definite or indefinite article:

| STRONG FORMS | WEAK FORMS |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| ander er, –e, –es | der, die, das andere |
| vieler, –e, –es | der, die, das viele |
| weniger, -e, -es | der, die, das wenige |
| beider, -e, -es | die beiden, nom. or acc. plur., |
| | the two, both |
| jeder, -e, -e3 | eines jeden, gen. sing. masc. or |
| | neut., of every (one) |

| solcher, | -e, -e8 | eines solchen, gen. sing. masc. or neut., of such a (one) | | |
|------------------|----------------------|--|--|--|
| | | teinem folchen, dat. sing. masc. or neut., to no such | | |
| ein er, | -e, -es ons | der, die, das eine the one | | |
| mein er , | -e, -es mine | der, die, das meine mine | | |
| dein er, | –e, –e& yours | der, die, das deine yours | | |
| sein er, | -e, -es his | der, die, das seine his | | |
| ihr er , | -e, -es hers | der, die, das ihre hers | | |
| sein er, | -e, -es its | der, die, das seine its | | |
| unserer, | –e, –e& ours | der, die, das unsere ours | | |
| euer er, | -e, -es yours | der, die, das euer e yours | | |
| ihr er, | –e, –e& theirs | der, die, das ihre theirs | | |
| Jhrer, | -e, -es yours | der, die, das Jhre yours | | |

88. Observe: (1) The stems of the first six pairs are given in 45 with complete strong endings; the rest in 50 with defective strong endings. -(2)Weak forms of beid- occur in the plural only, after the definite article or after possessives (meine beiden Brüder); of jeb-, after the indefinite article only; and of fold-, after the indefinite article and fein. - (3) The first seven pairs are used adjectively and pronominally, the rest only pronominally .---(4) The weak forms of the possessives above are less common than the strong.

Examples: 89.

WEAK

| STRONG | WEAK |
|--|--|
| ander er Wein other wine | der andere Wein the other wins |
| andere kamen später others came later | die anderen kamen später the othors came later |
| beider Brüder of both brothers | jener beiden Brüder of those two brothers |
| beide gingen both went | bie beiden gingen the two or both of them went |
| das Glüct viel er the happiness of many | das Glück der vielen the happi- ness of the many |
| mit wenig em Gelde with little money | mit diefem wenigen Gelde with this small amount of money |
| ein jeder Mensch every man | eines jeden Menschen of every man |
| ¹ -dem, der fam to everybody who ame | einem jed en, der fam <i>to every-</i> body who came |

| welch anderes Buch which other | welches |
|--------------------------------|---------------|
| book | book |
| tein folcher Anabe no such boy | teinem boy |
| nein or sein anderer Bruder my | mit n |
| or his other brother | Bru |

ich gab ihm mein¹ Bferd und er gab mir seines? I gave him my¹ horse and he gave me his²

ein anderes Buch another book

sie schrieb mit seiner 1 Feder und er schrieb mit ihrer 2 she wrote with his¹ pen and he wrote with hers 8 ¹ attributive adjective. - ² pronoun.

- eines anderen Buches of another book
- s andere Buch which other
- solchen Anaben to no such
- 1einem or seinem anderen der with my or his other brother
- ich gab ihm mein¹ Pferd und er gab mir das seine ² I gave him my^1 horse and he gave me his²
- fie schrieb mit feiner 1 Feder und er schrieb mit der ihren 2 she wrote with his¹ pen and he wrote with hers 2

90. With the pronominals and numerals in 87 compare the following, to which the principle of double inflection does not apply, for those on the left are never preceded by an article and those on the right always. The former are therefore always strong, the latter always weak.

| STRON | IG ON | LY | WEAK ONLY |
|-----------------|-------|-------|--|
| der, | die, | dað | derfelbe, diefelbe, dasselbe 1 the |
| dies er, | -e, | -e3 | same |
| jen er , | -e, | -e3 | derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige ¹ |
| keiner, | -e, | -e@1 | that, that one; he, she, it |
| mancher | , -e, | -e8 | der, die, das meinige ² mine |
| welcher, | -e, | -63 | der, die, das deinige yours |
| aller, | -e, | -e8 | der, die, das seinige his |
| ciniger, | -e, | -e§\$ | der, die, das ihrig e hers |
| mehreren | ¢ −e, | -e\$² | der, die, das seinig e its |
| Compare | secti | on 45 | der, die, das unsrige ours |
| | | | der, die, das eurige yours |
| | | | der, die, das ihrig e theirs |

¹ Distinguish feiner, feine, feines, the pronoun meaning none from tein, teine,

¹The article, though joined, is inflected throughout, e.g., gen. sing.

vours

der, die, das Ihrige

tein, the adjective meaning no (50). -2 Rare in the sing., except in the nom. or acc. neut.: einiges some things, mehreres several things.

besselben, berselben, besselben; bessenigen, berjenigen, bessenigen. Derjenige is used chiefly before relatives, e. g., biejenigen, welche tamen those who came. —² These forms of the possessives are more common than the other weak forms of 87.

DOUBLE INFLECTION OF SUBSTANTIVE ADJECTIVES

91. In German, as in English, adjectives may be used substantively and thus denote persons or things which possess the quality expressed by the adjective. In German, such an adjective is written with a capital, like a noun, but inflected like an adjective standing before a noun. It then denotes, in the singular of the masculine and feminine, a person possessing the quality; in the singular of the neuter, a thing which, or that in general which possesses the quality; in the plural, persons (never things) possessing the quality.

STRONG

| ein Alter | an old man |
|------------|-------------------|
| höre, Alte | listen, old woman |
| | |

- Altes und Neues old things and new
- ich wünsche Ihnen nur Gutes I wish you only what is good
- viel Gutes, Schönes und Wahres much that is good, beautiful and true

guter Alter good old man

- ein Deutscher a German (man)
- als Deutsche wurde sie gefragt, ob...being a German, she was asked if...
- alte Deutsche old Germans (men and women)

WEAK

ber Alte the old man

- ba ist die Alte there's the old woman
- das Alte und das Neue the old and the new (things)

ich wünsche Ihnen alles Gute I wish you all that is good

- bas Gute, bas Schöne und bas Wahre the good, the beautiful and the true or whatever is good, beautiful and true
- ber gute Alte the good old man
- der Deutsche the German (man) sie war eine Deutsche she was a German
- bie alten Deutschen the old Germans (men and women)

- Schwarze und Weiße black and white people
- fein Reisender no traveller
- ich sah viele Reisende (84) I saw many travellers
- bie Sonne scheint auf Gerechte und Ungerechte, auf Gute und Böse the sun shines on just and unjust, on good and bad
- mit Gutem fommt man weiter als mit Bösem with good words or treatment one gets on better than with bad
- etwas (was) or viel Gutes some or much good
- er bringt nichts Gutes he brings no good (news)
- er wußte allerlei Neues he knew all sorts of news
- ich Glücklicher I happy man

wir Deutsche (85) we Germans uns Deutsche (acc.) us Germans

- bie Schwarzen und die Weißen the blacks and the whites
- der Reisende the traveller
- das Gepäck des Reisenden the luggage of the traveller
- bie Sonne scheint auf die Gerechten, auf ten und die Ungerechten, auf die Suten und die Bösen the sun shines on the just etc.
- zur Rechten und zur Linken (dat. sing. fem., to agree with Hand) on the right and on the left
- manches Gute many a good thing or much that is good
- das Neue ist nicht immer das Beste the new is not always the best
- ihr Kleingläubigen O ye of little faith
- wir Deutschen (85) we Germans uns Deutschen (dat.) to us Germans

92. Neuter substantive adjectives denoting languages take frequently, but not necessarily, an ending when directly preceded by the definite article: bas Dentsche (also Deutsch) the German language; bas Studium des Englischen (less often Englisch) the study of Englisch; im Französsischen (also Französsisch) in the French language. Otherwise these substantives remain uninflected: bas beste Deutsch the best German; er sprach ein Englisch, bas niemand verstand he spoke (an) Englisch that nobody understood; er sauf Stalienisch ke said it in Italian; (ein) reines Deutsch (a) pure German.

93. Certain other adjectives have no ending when used substantively; these occur mostly in pairs, without article, and are written with small initials: beliebt bei alt und jung a favorite among old and young; gleich und gleich gefellt sich gern birds of a feather flock together; reich und arm, hoch und niedrig rich and poor, high and low.

DOUBLE INFLECTION OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

94. Comparatives and superlatives are formed by adding er and it to the stem of the positive.

Adjectives in e drop this e before the er of the comparative : meile mise. comp. weiser.

Adjectives ending in unaccented el, en, er commonly drop the e of these syllables before the er of the comparative : edel noble, comp. edler.

Adjectives in \$, §, fd, 3, b, t usually insert e before the ft of the superlative : heiß hot, heißeft-*; ftolz proud, ftolzeft-; milb mild, milbeft-; bunt gay, bunteft-; geschidt clever, geschidtest-. But participles in b add ft only : bebeutend important, bedeutendst-; ichmeichelnd flattering, ichmeichelndst-.

* The hyphen after the superlative forms indicates that, unlike the comparative, they are not used without ending, except now and then as adverbs (144).

95. Umlaut in Comparison. The following monosyllabic adjectives regularly modify the vowel in the comparative and superlative:

| alt | älter | älteft- | old |
|-----------|----------------|-------------|--------|
| falt | fälter | tältest- | cold |
| arg | ärger | ärgjt– | bad |
| ftart | ftärfer | ftärfjt- | strong |
| arm | ärmer | ārmjt- | poor |
| warm | wärmer | wärmst– | warm |
| hart | härte r | härtest- | hard |
| scharf | schärfer | fchärfft- | sharp |
| fchwarz . | schwärzer | schwärzest- | black |
| frant | fränker | fränfst- | ill |
| lang | länger | längst— | long |
| rot | röter | rötest- | red |
| jung | jünger | jüngst- | young |
| flug | flüger | flügst- | wise |
| furz | fürzer | fürzest- | short |

The following often modify the vowel : blas pale, nas wet, ichmal narrow, fromm pious, bumm stupid, gejund healthy. - See also 96.

96. Irregular Comparison. The following adjectives are irregular in their comparison:

| groß | größer | | größt– | great |
|------|--------|---|--------|-------|
| gut | besser | | best- | good |
| viel | mehr | • | meist- | much |

| hoch | höher | höchst— | high |
|------|-------|---------|------|
| nah | näher | nächst- | near |

The following comparatives and superlatives lack a positive; they are related to the prepositions or adverbs given in the place of the positive, and the superlative is formed by adding \mathfrak{f} to the comparative:

| in <i>in</i> | inner inner | innerst- innermost |
|---------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| aus out | äußer outer | äußerst- outermost |
| oben above | ober upper | oberst- uppermost |
| unter under | unter <i>lower</i> | unterst- undermost |
| vor before | vorder fore, front | vorderst- foremost |
| hinter behind | hinter hinder, hind | hinterst- hindmost |

From the superlatives erft- first and lett- last are formed the comparatives erfterer or ber erftere the former and letterer or ber lettere the latter.

97. Inflection. Comparatives and superlatives take the same endings as positives, according to 74.

EXAMPLES : größere Freude (fem.) greater joy, like gute Frau 77; ber ältere Mann the older man, like diefer or der gute Mann 77; mein bestes Buch my best book, like kein gutes Kind 80.

| | STRONG | WEAK |
|----|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| N. | größere Freude | der ältere Mann |
| G. | größer er Freude | des älteren Mannes |
| D. | größer er F reude | dem älteren Manne |
| A. | größere Freude | den älteren Mann |
| N. | größere Freuden | die älteren Männer |
| G. | größerer Freuden | der älteren Männer |
| D. | größeren Freuden | ber älteren Männern |
| A. | größere Freuden | die älteren Männer |
| N. | mein bestes Buch | |
| G. | | meines besten Buches |
| D. | ₩-> | meinem besten Buche |
| A. | mein bestes Buch | |
| N. | ≝→ | meine besten Bücher |
| G. | ₩-> | meiner besten Bücher |
| D. | ≝-≻ | meinen besten Büchern |
| A. | ₩ → | meine besten Bücher |

98. Examples of comparatives and superlatives used substantively (91):

| STRONG | WEAK | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| nichts Besseres nothing better | das Bessere the better | | |
| sein Äußeres its exterior | das Äußere the exterior | | |
| er tut sein Bestes he does his best | zu deinem Besten for your benefit | | |

DOUBLE INFLECTION OF ORDINAL NUMERALS

99. The cardinals, from which the ordinals are formed, run as follows.

| 1 | ein(\$) | 12 | zwölf | 23 | dreiundzwanzig | 149 | hundert neunund= |
|----|---------|----|----------------|-----|----------------|-------------|------------------|
| 2 | zwei | 13 | breizehn | 30 | dreißig | | vierzig |
| 3 | brei | 14 | vierzehn | 31 | einunddreißig | 2 00 | zweihundert |
| 4 | vier | 15 | fünfzehn | 32 | zweiunddreißig | 1000 | tausend |
| 5 | fünf | 16 | fechzehn | 40 | vierzig | 1133 | tausendeinhun= |
| 6 | fechs | 17 | fiebzehn | 50 | fünfzig | | dert dreiund= |
| 7 | fieben | 18 | achtzehn | 60 | fechzig | | dreißig or elf= |
| 8 | acht | 19 | neunzehn | 70 | fiebzig | | hundert drei= |
| 9 | neun | 20 | zwanzig | 80 | achtzig | | unddreißig |
| 10 | zehn | 21 | einundzwanzig | 90 | neunzig | 100000 | hunderttaufend |
| 11 | elf | 22 | zweiundzwanzig | 100 | hundert | 1000000 | eine Million' |

¹ Eins, a neuter pronominal form, is used when no other numeral follows; thus, in counting: eins, zwei, brei etc., hundert und eins; also in expressions of time, as es ift eins or halb eins it is one or half past twelve. Otherwise ein is used, as in einundzwanzig above, and in forming ordinals, as ber einundzwanzigfte (100). — For the inflection of einer, eine, eines and ber, bie, bas eine, see 87.

The other cardinals are usually uninflected, but the genitives justier, breier and the datives justien, breien are used when the case would not otherwise be obvious.

100. The Ordinals are adjectives resembling the superlatives. As preceded by the definite article, they are

| der erste the first | der zwanzigste the twentieth |
|---------------------------------|--|
| der zweite the second | der einundzwanzigste the twenty-first |
| der dritte the third | der zweiundzwanzigste the twenty-second |
| der vierte the fourth | ber breiundzwanzigste the twenty-third |
| der fünfte the fifth | ber breißigste the thirtieth |
| der sechste the sixth | der vierzigste the fortieth |
| der siebente the seventa | der hundertste the hundredth |
| der achte (one t) the eighth | der tausendste the thousandth. |
| ber neunte the ninth etc., with | te up to twentieth, after that with fie. |

The ordinals share the double inflection of ordinary adjectives :

| STRONG | WEAK |
|--|---|
| erstes Rapitel first chapter | das erste Rapitel the first chapter |
| ein britter Fall ift undenkbar a third case is inconceivable | ber britte Fall ift folgender the third case is as follows |

- als vierter Sohn (as, that is) der vierte Sohn the fourth son being the fourth son (1^{5})
- siebenter Bers, erstes Wort sev- im siebenten Bers das erste Wor' enth verse, first word in the seventh verse etc.

101. Summary: Pronouns, Adjectives, Numerals.

| (ODD INFLECTIONS : Pronouns | II INVARIABLE : 1 Prons. Adjs. | | | | o Stem-Forms jectives 71–73 |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------|--------|---------------|--------------------------------|
| der dem. rel. 42 | fich 39 einander 40 | n | tein n | nine | unser ours |
| wer was 43 | felbst 41 man 136 | | ein th | | euer your? |
| jedermann 44 | etwas nichts 137 | | in hi | | thr theirs |
| jemand 44 | mehr more 140 | | r her | | 3hr yours |
| niemand 44 | weniger less 140 | | in its | | gut good |
| | | 1. | | | better |
| IV DEFECTIVE STRONG | V COMPLETE STRO | ONG | VI | WE. | AK INFLECTION : |
| INFLECTION : | INFLECTION : | | | | |
| Adjs. 50 | Prons. Adjs. 45 | | | Pror | s. Adjs. 90 |
| ein, -e, - a, an, one | ber the, that | | beri | enige | ····· · ···· |
| lein, -e, — no | teiner, -e, -es non | e | | elbe | |
| mein, - e , — my | diefer, -e, -es | | | | as meinig e mine |
| dein, -e, — thy | jener, -e, -es | | | | as deinig e thine |
| etc. | welcher, -e, -es | | | | etc. |
| | einiger, -e, -es | | | | |
| | aller, -e, -es | | | | |
| | mancher, -e, -es | | | | |
| | mehrerer, -e, -e8 | | | | |
| V-VI Dour | BLE INFLECTION : ST | RONG | AND | WEAD | K : |
| | tantives 91. Compar | | | | Ordinals 100. |
| Strong | • | | - | Weak | |
| ander er, –e, –es | • | der | die | das c | indere |
| vieler, -e, -es | | der | die | das r | viele |
| weniger, -e, -es | | der | | | venige |
| beider, -e, -es | | bi | | | beid en |
| jeder, -e, -es | | | nes j | | |
| jolcher, -e, -es | | |)eines | | en |
| einer, -e, -es one | 8 | der | die | bas e | ine the one |
| meiner, -e, -es n | | der | die | das 1 | nein e min e |
| beiner, -e, -es th | ine | der | die | das b | eine thine |
| etc. | | | | etc. | |
| guter, –e, –es | | der | die | das g | ute |
| Gutes | | | | 9 Gut | |
| besser, -e, -es | | der | die | das f | effer e |
| bester, -e, -es | | der | | da s E | |
| erster, -e, -es | | der | die | bas e | rjte |
| | | | | | |

USES AND CONSTRUCTIONS

102. Uses and constructions of German which differ from English and are most important to the beginner are here treated under the following heads:

- I Articles. Nouns of Measure. Names of Cities. Cases
- II Pronouns
- **III** Comparatives and Superlatives
- IV Numerals
- V Verbs
- VI Adverbs
- VII Prepositions
- VIII Conjunctions
- IX Order of Words

I. Articles — Nouns of Measure — Names of Cities — Cases

103. The Definite Article is used with abstract and generic nouns, names of seasons, months, days and streets :

| die Zeit steht nie still | time never stands still |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| das Gold ist gelb | gold is yellow |
| ich mag den Winter nicht | I don't like winter |
| im April | in April |
| am Mittwoch | on Wednesday |
| in der Karlstraße | in Charles Street |

See also 148. - For articles before proper names see 67.

104. The definite article, sometimes with the dative of a personal or reflexive pronoun, commonly takes the place of a possessive adjective, provided that no ambiguity can arise:

| was hat sie in der Hand? | what has she in her hand? |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| ich brach mir das Bein und er | I broke my leg and he broke his |
| brach sich den Arm | arm |

ARTICLES, ETC.

105. The Indefinite Article is omitted before an unmodified predicate noun denoting vocation, rank or profession, before an appositive introduced by als *as*, and before hundert and taufend, unless they are to mean *one hundred* and *one thousand*:

| der Bater war Schneider (but ein | the father was a tailor (a clever |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| geschickter Schneider) | tailor) |
| als Freund half er mir | being my friend he helped me |
| fagte er "hundert" oder "tausend"? | did he say a hundred or a thou- |
| | sand ? |

106. Nouns of Measure, Weight, quantity and extent, except feminines in e, are used in the singular after numerals, and a following noun denoting the substance measured is usually treated as an appositive:

| zehn Fuß hoch | ten feet high |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| zwei Glas Waffer | two glasses of water |
| für drei Pfund Fleisch | for three pounds of meat |
| mit zwei Pfund Federn | with two pounds of feathers |
| er gab fünf Mart | he gave five marks |
| But | |
| drei Ellen (fem. in e) Tuch | three yards of cloth |

If the noun denoting the substance measured is modified, the genitive is used in more elevated style and the appositional construction or von with the dative in the more colloquial language: er trank zwei Glas diefes Weines or von diefem Weine he drank two glasses of this wine, nimm zwei Pfund guten Tees or zwei Pfund guten Tee take two pounds of good tea.

107. Names of Cities, kingdoms etc. are used without anything corresponding to of:

| die | Stadt | Paris | the | city | of Paris |
|-----|-------|----------------|-----|-------|-----------|
| der | Staat | <u> Ranjas</u> | the | state | of Kansas |

108. The Nominative, besides being the case of the subject, the case of address (vocative) and the case of the predicate noun, is also used in the passive of some verbs which in the active take two accusatives: er wurde der Alte genannt (active, he was called the old man man nannte ihn den Alten)

Berben in the sense of *be changed into, turn into* is commonly construed with zu and the dative:

| er wurde zum Verräter | he turned traitor |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| das Eis wurde zu Wasser | the ice turned into water |

109. The Genitive is often used adverbially:

| eines Tages or Morgens | one day or morning |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| morgens und abends | (in the) morning and evening |
| meines Wissens | to my knowledge |
| feineswegs | by no means |

110. The genitive is used with many adjectives and verbs

| meiner Sache gewiß | sure of my case |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| des Redens müde | tired of talking |
| feiner würdig | worthy of him |
| gedenk meiner | think of me |
| schone ihrer | spare her or them |
| ich erinnere mich dessen | I remember it |
| sie beraubten ihn seines Geldes | they robbed him of his money |
| ich erinnere mich dessen | |

For the genitive with prepositions see 220.

111. The Dative, besides being the case of the indirect object (113), is used with some intransitive verbs which in English appear as transitive, e.g.

| antworten answer | gehorchen obey |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| begegnen meet | glauben <i>believe</i> |
| danken thank | helfen help |
| dienen <i>serve</i> | nutzen benefit |
| einfallen occur to | schaden injure |
| folgen follow | schmeicheln flatter |
| gefallen <i>please</i> | trauen <i>trust</i> |
| widerste'hen | resist |

Thus, antwortet mir ! answer me ! ich helfe Ihnen I help you etc.

112. The dative is used with many adjectives and idiomatic verb-phrases, e.g.

| es tut mir leid, daß | I am sorry that |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| das geschieht ihm recht | that serves him right |
| mir träumte, daß | I dreamed that |
| was fehlt dir? | what's the matter with you? |
| es war mir lieb, daß | I was pleased that |
| der Herr ist ihr fremd | the gentleman is a stranger to her |
| das ist allen bekannt | that's known to all |
| See also 104 For the dative with | prepositions see 222. |

113. Note. To with the objective as the indirect object of a transitive verb is rendered by the German dative, e.g. he gave the book to your brother er gab bas Buch Ihrem Bruder. To with the objective as a prepositional phrase with an intransitive verb, as he went to your brother, is rendered by zu with the dative: er ging zu Ihrem Bruder.

114. The Accusative, besides being the case of the direct object, is used adverbially, to express time, distance, price etc.:

| er | las den ganzen Tag | he read all day |
|----|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| er | geht die Straße hinunter | he is going down the street |
| eø | kostet eine Mark | it costs a mark |

115. The accusative is used absolutely:

da steht er, den Hut in der einen there he stands, his hat in one Hand und das Buch in der hand and the book in the andern other

116. A few verbs take two accusatives, e. g.

er lehrt den Anaben das Schreis he teaches the boy how to write ben

fie fragte mich vieles she asked me many questions

But verbs of choosing, making, appointing etc. are construed with zu (108), e. g. they made or chose him captain sie machten or wählten ihn zum Hauptmann (in the passive, er wurde zum Hauptmann gemacht or gewählt).

For the accusative with prepositions see 224.

II PRONOUNS

117. Agreement in Grammatical Gender between pronoun and noun takes place as a rule, but rarely with bas Mächen. bas Fräulein and bas Beib, where the natural gender prevails: ich rief bas Mädchen und sie kam I called the girl and she came.

118. Substitutes for Personal Pronouns. For the pronouns of the third person when depending on a preposition and referring to objects without life, German commonly substitutes ba (before vowels bar) compounded with a preposition, or it uses some other adverb:

er nahm die Feder und schrieb damit (for mit ihr)

hier standen Tische und darauf (for auf ihnen) lagen Bücher

wir fanden das Zimmer und gingen hinein (for in es) (therewith) with it here stood tables and (thereon) on them lay books

he took the pen and wrote

we found the room and went into it

119. Special Uses of e8:

- (a) es waren die Brüder they were (or it was) t
 (b) es war einmal ein Brinz there was once a prin
- (b) co ibut chilinat chi pring
- (c) es waren einmal drei Prinzen
- (d) es kamen viele

they were (or it was) the brothers there was once a prince there were once three princes there came many

Es serves as the indefinite subject of fein with a predicate nominative (a), or as the anticipatory or grammatical subject of any verb (b, c, d), the verb in both uses agreeing in number with the pred. nom. or the logical subject. — When the pred. nom. is a personal pronoun, it comes first: ich war es (not "es war ich") it was I, sie waren es (not "es waren sie") it was they, and the verb agrees with the predicate in person also: ihr feib es (not "es set ihr" nor "es ist ihr") it is you...- Sometimes es means so: man fagt es they say so.

120. Pronouns of Address:

- (a) wo bist du, Karl? dein Bater ruft dich
- (b) wo feid ihr, Karl und Marie? euer Bater ruft euch
- (c) wo find Sie, Herr Schmidt? or meine Herren? ich soll 3h= nen diesen Brief von Ihrem Freunde geben
- where are you, Charles? your father is calling you
- where are you, Charles and Mary? your father is calling you
- where are you, Mr. Smith? or gentlemen? I am to give you this letter from your friend

PRONOUNS

(a) addressed to one person with whom the speaker is intimate or to a young child; (b) addressed to several such persons; (c) addressed to one or more persons with whom the speaker is not intimate.

121. Possessives. Of the possessive pronominals, those with defective inflection — mein meine mein, bein beine bein etc. (50) — are used like their English equivalents, the shorter forms my, thy etc.: mein Haus ift all my house is old.

The other four sets of German possessives have only one set of English equivalents, the longer forms *mine*, thine etc., but they differ in use, according as they are inflected or not. Thus, dies Haus ift mein (uninflected predicate adjective, 73) means simply this house is my property or belongs to me and no one else. But dies Haus ift meines or das meine (87) or das meinige (90, inflected pronouns) repeats the idea house in the strong ending es, or in the article das and the weak ending e, making the statement equivalent to this house is the one that belongs to me, where the one also repeats the idea house.

The last two forms are used as substantives with capitals: ich beschütze das Meine or das Meinige I protect what is mine or my own, er tat das Seine or das Seinige he did his duty or share, jeder liebt die Seinen or die Seinigen everybody loves his own (friends or relatives).

122. The Demonstratives are

Ÿ,

C

ł

1

ber, bie, bas (42, 45, 46) that, that one; he, she, it biefer, biefe, biefes (47) this, this one, the latter jener, jene, jenes (45) that, that one, the former berjenige, biejenige, basjenige (90) that, that one; he, she, it berfelbe, biefelbe, basjelbe (90) the same folcher, folche, folches (45) such, such a one

Each of these words is used as pronoun and as adjective.

123. Der, as adjective (45, 46), differs from the definite article only in greater emphasis, which is often indicated by spaced letters: das Buch habe ich gelesen, gib mir ein anderes that book I have read, give me another.

124. Der, as pronoun (42), is used as follows:

| feinen Bruder suchen Sie? der ist fort | is it his brother you are look- ing for? he is gone |
|--|---|
| fragen Sie den da mit dem Stock | ask him or that man there with the cane |
| fuhren Sie mit Ihren Pferden oder mit denen Ihres Bru- ders? | did you drive your own horses or those of your brother (or your brother's)? |
| das sind 1 meine Töchter | those are my daughters |
| bas find ¹ Sie und bas (or bies) bin ¹ ich. | that's you and that (or this) is myself |

¹ Das and bies follow the same construction as es (119), except that the predicate, if a personal pronoun, does not precede, as it does in id bin es. See also 126 and 141.

125. The Relatives and Interrogatives are

ber die das (42) who, which, that, rel. pron. only welcher, -e, -es (45) who, which, that, rel. & interrog. pron. & adj wer (43) who, he who, whoever, rel. & interrog. pron. only was (43) what, that which, whatever, rel. & interrog. pron. only

126. RELATIVE CLAUSES

DEMONSTRATIVE CLAUSES

ba fam ein Mann, ber or welcher arm war und bessen Sohn lange frank gewesen war then came a man who was poor and whose son had been ill a long time ba kam ein Mann, der war arm und dessen Sohn war lange krank gewesen then came a man, and he was poor, and his son had etc.

Observe: (1) Relative clauses require the transposed order, demonstrative clauses the normal order (231 ff.). -(2) The choice between ber and weicher is largely a matter of euphony, but the genitive of weicher is not used pronominally, hence beffen (not "weiches") Sohn above. -(3) But ber is the relative after a personal pronoun of the 1. or 2. person, the antecedent being generally repeated in the relative clause and attracting the verbinto the same person: was weißt bu bavon, ber bu nie ein Schiff geschen haft? what do you know about it who have never seen a ship:

127. The Relative not omitted:

das Buch, das or welches ich lese the book I am reading (never "das Buch ich lese")

| 128. Substitutes for der or | welcher (compare 118): |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| die Feder, womit (for mit der or | the pen (wherewith) with which |
| welcher) ich schreibe | I am writing |
| Tische, worauf (for auf denen or | tables (whereon) on which lay |
| welchen) Bücher lagen | books |
| womit (for missing dative of was | (wherewith was she writing?) |
| after mit) schrieb sie? | what was she writing with? |
| 129. Wer and was. (1) T | he implied antecedent of wer or |
| was may be emphasized by a de | emonstrative : |

wer zu spät kam, der wurde be= he who or whoever came too late straft (he) was punished was ich habe, das gebe ich dir what or whatever I have (that) I give thee

With wer this must be done when there is a change of construction: wer zuerst fam, dem gab er es whoever came first, to him he gave it.

130. (2) After neuter pronouns and neuter substantive adjectives of the superlative degree, was, instead of bas or welches, is the regular relative:

| das, was ich habe, gebe ich | that which I have I give |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| alles, was ich hatte | all that I had |
| etwas, was ich verlor | something that I lost |
| das Beste, was ich weiß | the best (that) I know |

131. (3) Bas often means why? was läufst du so schnell? why do you run so fast?

132. (4) Was may stand for etwas (137): haben Sie was Sutes? have you anything good?

133. (5) In was für ein what kind of, was is indeclinable and für has no prepositional force: was für ein Mann (nom.) ist er? what kind of man is he? mit was für einer Feder (dat. after mit) schreibt er? what kind of pen is he writing with?

See also 141.

Ċ

134. Indefinite Relatives are especially those accompanied by auch, (auch) nur or auch immer;

| welche Mittel er auch versuchte | whatever means he tried |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| wer es auch (immer) sei | whoever it may be |
| wo er sich nur zeigte | wherever he showed himself |

135. The Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives are

| PRONOUN | S ONLY | PRONOUNS ANI | D ADJECTIVES |
|--------------|-------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| jedermann 44 | every one, | all- 45 | all |
| | everybody | einig— 45 | some, a fe vo |
| jemand 44 | some one, | manch— 45 | many a |
| | somebody | mehrer– 45 | several |
| niemand 44 | no one, | jed– 45. 87 | each, every |
| | nobody | ander– 45. 87 | other, the rest |
| man 136 | one, | beid- 45. 87 | both, two |
| | some one | viel- 45. 87 | much |
| etwas 137 | someth ing | wenig– 45. 87 | little, fe v |
| nichts 137 | nothing | ein- 50. 87 | one |
| | | fein– 50. 90 | no, none |
| | • | mehr 140 | more |
| | | weniger 140 | less, fewer |

136. Man is indeclinable. Its equivalents are (a) one: man muß arbeiten um zu leben one must work in order to live; (b) they or people: man fagt, ber Präsibent sei hier they or people say that the president is here; (c) a passive construction: man sagt, er fomme morgen it is said that he will come to-morrow.

Never use er to refer to a preceding man : wenn man zu schnell läuft, so kann man (not "er") leicht fallen if one runs too fast, he is likely to have a fall.

137. Etwas and nichts are indeclinable. Both occur frequently with a substantive adjective in apposition (91). Etwas may also have a noun as appositive: etwas Gelb some money. For was instead of etwas see 132.

138. All- often means every: er tam alle Tag(e) or alle Jahr(e)einmal he came once every day or every year; alle Stunde einen $\mathfrak{F}_{\mathfrak{F}}$ löffel voll every hour one table-spoonful; er hat allen Grund dazu he has every reason for it. — See also 82. 141.

All in the sense of entire, whole is ganz: he stayed all day er blieb den ganzen Tag.

139. Niel- and menig-, when not inflected, are apt to have

a collective meaning, whereas the inflected forms tend to have a distributive meaning:

| wir haben nicht viel Üpfel | we have not many (a large crop |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| dies Jahr und viele sind | of) apples this year and many |
| nicht zu essen | (single or individual) apples |
| | are not fit to eat |
| viel Wein | much (a large quantity of) wine |
| vieler Wein | many kinds of wine |
| wenig Wein | little (a small quantity of) wine |
| weniger Wein | few kinds of wine |

After ein, wenig is usually uninflected : ein wenig a little, ein wenig Baffer a little water.

140. Wheher and tweniger, as comparatives of viel and wenig, are usually invariable: ber eine gab mehr, ber andere weniger one gave more, the other less, er hat mehr Geld, aber weniger Land als ich he has more money, but less land than I.

141. The Neuter Singular of Certain Pronouns is often used in the sense of a plural and may denote persons or things:

| er sagte mir einiges or manches or mehreres or vieles or weni- ges, was ich nicht wußte | he told me some things or a num- ber of things or several things or many things or few things that I did not know |
|---|--|
| für anderes hatte er keinen Sinn | for other things he (had no sense) did not care |
| das andere nahm er | the rest he took |
| mit beidem zufrieden | content with either or both |
| das kriegt nie genug | that kind of fellow or such a fel- low never gets enough |
| was singen kann, das singe | whoever can sing, let him sing |
| alles, was konnte, kam | all that could come, came |
| jedes wollte Geld, keines wollte Arbeit | every one or each wanted money, nobody or neither wanted work |

III. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

142. The Comparative is sometimes used absolutely, i. e. not implying direct comparison:

| er blieb längere Zeit | he stayed (not longer than others, |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| | but) quite a while |
| eine ältere Dame | an elderly lady |

143. The Superlative, when used predicatively or adverbially, assumes the fixed form of a phrase made up of am and the dative singular:

- (a) der Tee ist am besten (not *tea is best when it comes over-*"best"), wenn er über Land *land* sommt
- (b) die Rosen sind am schönsten roses are finest in June (not "schönst") im Juni
- (c) du läufst am schnellsten you run fastest (not "schnellst")

In (a) and (b) the superlative is used predicatively, in (c) adverbially. The absence of the article in all three English equivalents is one of the marks by which predicative and adverbial superlatives can usually be distinguished from the attributive.

144. Superlative Stem-Forms, as given in 94. 95 and 96 are not used, except, now and then, adverbially; e. g.

| höchst most highly, highly | jüngst recently, lately |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| längst long since | meist mostly |
| äußerst extremely | möglichst to the utmost, as much |
| gefälligst kindly, please | as possible |

145. Superlative Adverbs with aufs and the accusative are common, e.g.

aufs beste in the best possible aufs flarste in the clearest posmanner sible manner

Observe the difference in meaning between these phrases and those with am (143):

fie sang aufs beste she sang her sie sang best (of all who sang)

146. Aller before Superlatives strengthens their meanings: mein allerbester Freund my very best friend, du läusst am allerschnellsten you run fastest of all.

IV NUMERALS

147. The Hours of the Day are expressed as follows:

| es ist neun Uhr or ein viertel | it is nine o'clock or a quarter |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| auf zehn or halb zehn or drei | past nine or half past nine |
| viertel auf zehn | or a quarter to ten |
| er kam um elf Uhr | he came at eleven o'clock |
| See also 99 ¹ . | |

148. Dates. When simply the year is given, the cardinals are used and may or may not be preceded by im Jahre, e.g. Goethe wurde 1749 (fiebzehnhundert neunundvierzig), or im Jahre 1749, geboren (not "in 1749") Goethe was born in 1749.

When the day of the month is given, an ordinal is used, preceded by am, or, in dating letters, by den, and followed directly by the name of the month: Goethe wurde am 28. (achtundzwanzigsten) August 1749 geboren Goethe was born etc.; Berlin, den 4. (vierten) April 1891 Berlin, April 4th, 1891.

V VERBS

149. No Progressive Forms: ich gehe = I walk and I am walking, ich ging = I walked and I was walking etc.

150. Emphatic, Interrogative and Negative Forms require nothing to correspond to do. Thus, I did write is ich schrieb' or ich schrieb' ja or ich schrieb wohl'. Did you walk is gingst bu? gingt ihr? or gingen Sie (lit. walked you?) I did not walk is ich ging nicht (lit. I walked not). Didn't you walk is gingst bu nicht? etc. (lit. walked you not?)

151. The Present is often used for the future or for the English I am going to + infinitive: ich gehe morgen auf die Jagd I shall go or am going hunting to-morrow. Also, to signify that a state or an action begun in the past still continues:

wie lange find Sie hier er ist schn Jahr Soldat wears (and is still)

But er ist zehn Jahr Soldat gewesen he was a soldier for ten years (and is a soldier no longer). 152. The Past. The peculiar use above extends to the past: ich war ichon zehn Jahr Solbat I had then been a soldier for ten years (and was still). Otherwise the past is the regular tense for narration (see 153).

153. The Perfect, as used in sentences like er ift gestern angesommen he arrived yesterday or Goethe hat das Gedicht geschrieben G. wrote the poem, merely conveys information or states bare facts without attendant circumstances. If the reader is to be transported to the scene of action and given a vivid presentation of the facts, the past is used: er sam gestern an (supply e.g. als Sie nicht zu Hause waren when you were not at home) or Goethe schrieb das Gedicht (supply e.g. mährend er in Italien war while he was in Italy).

154. The Future and Future Perfect (often with wohl) may be used to state what the speaker surmises or conjectures to be true: es wird (wohl) bein Bruder jein, der da flopft it is probably your brother that is knocking there.

155. The Subjunctive may express a Wish (Optative Subjunctive): er lebe hoch! long may he live! wäre ich doch gesund! would that I were well! hätte er nur geschrieben! if he only had written!

156. The Subjunctive may express Purpose: sage es ihm, bamit er komme tell him in order that he may come, ich sagte es ihm, bamit er köme I told him so that he might come.

157. The Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences contrary to fact:

A. In the present or in the immediate future,

| CONDITION | CONCLUSION |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| If I had money, or Had I money, | I should be happy |
| Wenn ich Geld hätte, (past subj.) | fo wäre ich glücklich (past subj.) or, less often, fo würde ich glücklich fein (pres. conditional) |

or Hätte ich Geld, fo wäre ich glücklich (past subj. with inverted or, less often, order instead of wenn fo würde ich glücklich fein with transposed order) or, with inversion of clauses, CONCLUSION CONDITION if I had money (had I money) I should be happy, 3ch wäre glücklich, wenn ich Geld hätte or (less often hätte ich Gelb) Ich würde alücklich fein B. In the past. CONDITION CONCLUSION If I had had money, or Had I had money, I should have been happy so wäre ich g. gewesen (pluperf. subj.) Wenn ich G. gehabt hätte, fo würde ich g. gewefen fein (perf. conditional) (pluperf. subj.) Hätte ich Geld gehabt, so wäre ich g. gewesen (pluperf. subj., with inverted or, less often, order instead of wenn with fo würde ich g. gewesen sein transposed order) or, with inversion of clauses, CONCLUSION CONDITION I should have been happy, if I had had money (had I had m.) Ich wäre g. gewesen. wenn ich G. gehabt hätte or, less often. (less often hätte ich G. gehabt) 3ch würde g. gewesen sein,

158. Observe: 1 The Condition, or the *if*-clause, takes the subjunctive only, not the conditional.

2. The Condition may be implied only, or partly expressed: Wie glücklich wäre ich! how happy I should be! (supply e.g. wenn ich reich wäre) or Um zwölf Uhr wäre es zu spät gewesen at 12 o'clock it would have been too late (here the complete Condition may be supposed to be wenn wir um zwölf Uhr gekommen wären). AN ABSTRACT OF GERMAN GRAMMAR

3. The Conclusion may be implied only, or partly expressed: Wenn ich nur reich wäre! If I only were rich \langle (supply e.g. wie glücklich würde ich fein how happy I should be) or Er sprach, als (= als er sprechen würde) wenn er reich wäre or (without if and with inverted order) als wäre er reich he spoke as (= as he would speak) if he were rich.

159. The Concessive Subjunctive:

es sei heiß oder kalt, ich gehe be it hot or cold, I shall go er sei noch so reich or wie reich however rich he may be, I do er auch sei, ich achte ihn nicht not respect him

160. The Diplomatic Subjunctive, used to soften an assertion:

nun wären wir ja fertig damit with it or now, it seems to me, we are through with it es dürfte zu spät sein it is too late, I think or I fear

161. The Subjunctive of Indirect Statement. The subjunctive forms of the present, perfect and future are most frequent in clauses dependent on words of saying, reporting, thinking, inquiring, doubting etc. Their use in such clauses is to emphasize the indirect or hearsay character of that which is said, reported etc., whereas the indicative tends to make it appear as actual.

| 162. DIRECT STATEMENT | INDIRECT STATEMENT |
|--|---|
| A. says, or has said, to B: 1. I have no money 3ch habe | B. says, or reports, to C: 1ª A. says that he has no |
| fein Geld | money A. fagt, daß er kein Geld habe 1 ^{b.} A. said that he had no |
| | money A. sagte, daß er kein Geld habe |
| 2. Who has been here? Wer | 2ª. A. asks who has been |
| ift hier gewefen? | here A. fragt, wer hier gewesen |
| | 2 ^{b.} A. asked who had been here A. fragte, wer hier gewesen |

fei

168

;

3. I think she will soon get well 3ch glaube, sie wird bald wieder gesund werden 3ª A. thinks she will soon get well again A. glaubt, sie werde bald wieder gesund werden

3^{b.} A. thought she would soon get well again A. glaubte, sie werde bald wieder gesund werden

163. Observe: — The rule is that the same tense of the subjunctive should be used in the indirect statement as in the direct, whether the principal verb is in the present, as in 1^a (fagt), 2^a (fragt), 3^a (glaubt), or in the past, as in 1^b (fagte), 2^b (fragte), 3^b (glaubte). But if the principal verb is in the past and the form of the present, perfect or future subjunctive coincides with the corresponding indicative form, it is best to substitute those of the past subjunctive, pluperfect subjunctive or present conditional respectively, e.g.

| DIRECT Gehen die Kinder mit uns? do the children go with us? | INDIRECT Sie fragte, ob die Kinder mit uns gingen (for gehen) she asked if the children were going with us |
|--|--|
| Sie haben ihn nicht gesehen they | Man fagte, daß sie ihn nicht ge= |
| have not seen him. | sehen hätten (for haben) <i>it was</i> |

said that they had etc. These substitutions are also found, especially in the spoken language of Northern Germany, where they are not needed in order to gain a distinctively subjunctive form, e.g. fie fragten, ob er ihn gefehen hätte (for habe).

164. The Infinitive. Active Form with Passive Meaning. \tilde{v} ören, jehen and lajjen may be followed by an infinitive omitting its object-subject (besides omitting zu, as *hear*, see and *let* or *have*, in a causal sense, omit to). The infinitive is then rendered by a passive construction:

- With object-subject and active Without object-subject and with meaning passive meaning
- ich hörte ihn Deutsch sprechen I ich hörte Deutsch sprechen I heard heard him speak German German spoken

- ich sah sie das Haus bauen I saw them build the house
- er ließ den Diener ihm den Brief bringen he had (let) the servant bring him the letter
- ich sah das Haus bauen I saw the house (being) built
- er ließ sich (von dem Diener) den Brief bringen he had the letter brought to him (by the servant)

165. (E3) läßt sich with an active infinitive is quite commonly the equivalent of can with a passive infinitive or of a similar construction: es läßt sich nicht leugnen, daß *it cannot be denied that*, das Brot ließ sich nicht mehr essen *the bread* (could no longer be eaten) was no longer fit to eat, es läßt sich nicht beschreiben *it* (cannot be described) is indescribable.

166. Phrases or sentences may thus occur, with laffen, which without context are ambiguous, e.g. ich ließ ihn (dyreiben = I let him write, if ihn refers to a person, and I had it written, if ihn refers to a letter; but ich ließ ihm (dyreiben can mean only I had him written to or I caused some one to write to him. Similarly ich ließ ihn (uchen = I let him look (for somebody or something) and I caused him to be looked for (by somebody).

167. The active form of the infinitive with zu may have passive meaning also after sein, e.g. es ist nicht zu beschreiben *it* is (not to be described) indescribable and, as in English, (hier ist) ein Haus zu vermieten (here is) a house to let.

168. Other Special Uses of the Infinitive:

| er blieb liegen or sitzen | he remained lying or sitting |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| er blieb stehen usually, | he stopped, halted, |
| but also | he remained standing |
| wir fuhren spazieren | we went for a drive |
| wir gingen spazieren | we went for a walk |
| wir ritten spazieren | we went for a horseback ride |
| er hat Wein im Keller liegen | he has wine lying in his cellar |
| um zu schreiben | in order to write |
| (an)statt zu schreiben | instead of writing |
| ohne zu schreiben | without writing |
| laufen! or nicht laufen! (173) | run! or don't run! |

169. Infinitive Phrases have the infinitive at the end: er bat mich, das Buch mitzubrinoen und recht bald zu fommen he asked

VERBS

me to bring the book with me and (to) come very soon. The ju must be repeated with every infinitive.

For infinitive nouns see 56. 2.

170. The Imperative is used as follows:

1. komm und geh and go with me, Charles

2. gib mir dein Buch, Rarl give me your book, Charles

3. geh du', Karl, ich will nicht you' go, Charles, I don't want to

1ª. kommt und geht mit mir, Karl come mit mir, Karl und Ma= rie or Kinder come and go with me, Charles and Mary or children

> 2ª. gebt mir eure Bücher, Karl und Marie or Kinder give me your books, Charles and Mary or children

3ª. geht ihr', Karl und Marie or Kinder, ich will nicht you' go, Charles and Mary etc.

1b. kommen Sie und gehen Sie mit mir. Herr Schmidt or meine Herren come and go with me, Mr. Smith or gentlemen

2b. geben Sie mir Ihre Bücher, Herr S. or meine Herren give me your books, Mr. S. or gentlemen

3b. gehen Sie', Herr S. or meine Herren, ich will nicht you' go, Mr. S. or gentlemen etc.

1, 2, 3 are addressed to one person with whom the speaker is intimate or to a young child; 1^a, 2^a, 3^a, to several such persons; 1^b, 2^b, 3^b, to one or more persons with whom the speaker is not intimate. The pronouns but and ihr in 3 and 3ª are used only for emphasis or contrast; the pronoun Sie in 1^b, 2^b, 3^b, whether emphatic or not, is never omitted and is repeated with every imperative, as in 1^{b.}

171. The Participles are verbal adjectives and subject to inflection and comparison (94) when used attributively.

172. The present participle of a transitive verb used as an attributive and preceded by au has passive force and implies necessity or possibility:

eine zu stürmende Festung

a fortress that has or had to be stormed

eine nicht zu stürmende Festung

a fortress that cannot or could not be stormed

173. The past participle, in the sense of a present participle in English, occurs with fommen: er fam gelaufen or gesprungen he came running or jumping. It may also have the force of an imperative (168): ftillgestanden! stand still!

174. If modified, participles are preceded by their modifiers: ber im Wagen sitende Herr the gentleman sitting in the carriage, ben von sechs Pferden gezogenen Wagen the carriage drawn by six horses. But in participial clauses the past participle often stands first: ber Wagen, von sechs Pferden gezogen or der Wagen, gezogen von sechs Pferden.

175. The Passive.

Werben + past participle denotes a process or a change of condition and is the real passive:

Der Brief wurde (gerade) geschrieben, als ich kam the letter was (just) being written when I came

Die Soldaten sind gefangen worden the soldiers have been or were captured Sein + past participle denotes a state or condition resulting from a process or an action completed, and might be called the resultant passive:

Der Brief war (schon) geschrie= ben, als ich kam the letter was (already) written or finished when I came

Die Soldaten sind gefangen the soldiers are captives

176. The passive is less often used in German than in English, an active verb with man or a reflexive construction often taking its place, e. g. bann begrub man bie Toten then the dead were buried, es hat fich gezeigt, baß es nicht geht it has been shown that it won't do.—There are also passive constructions of verbs used intransitively: es wird ba getanzt there is dancing going on there. If ba stands first, es is omitted : ba wurde getanzt (178. 179).

177. Reflexive Verbs are often construed with a genitive or a dative or a prepositional phrase: freu(e) dich des Lebens! rejoice in life! das Jahr naht sich seinem Ende the year is drawing to a close sie fürchtete sich vor dem Hunde she was afraid of the dog

178. There are also reflexive constructions of verbs used in-

VERBS

transitively: es tanzt sich hier gut (it is good dancing here i. e.) this is a good place for dancing. If da stands first, es is not omitted : da tanzt es sich gut (176. 179).

Sentences containing Impersonal Verbs or verb-phrases: 179. Beginning with es Beginning with some other word

1. es regnete gestern it rained *yesterday*

2. es geht mir gut I am well es gibt folche Leute there are such people

3. es friert mich und es hun= gert mich I am cold and hungry 1ª gestern regnete es yesterday

it rained

2ª mir geht es gut I am well folche Leute gibt es there are such people

3ª mich friert und mich hun= gert I am cold and hungry

Impersonal verbs like those under 3 and 3^a, which describe a state of body or mind, differ from the rest in the omission of es if the sentence begins with a word other than es (176.178)

180. Modal Auxiliaries. Dürfeu :

Darf ich jetzt gehen? wer darf hier befehlen?

das dürfte wahr sein

aber keiner darf es hören Sie dürfen nur befehlen und ich fomme

181. Können :

bas fann wahr sein ich kann nicht weg ich kann nicht nach Hause ich kann nichts dafür (or dazu)

See also 186.

182. Mögen :

das mag wahr sein ich mag gern Musik hören ich mag nicht reisen er mochte nicht effen

may I go now? who has the right to command here? that (might =) is likely to be true but nobody must hear it you need but command and I will come

that may be true I cannot go or get away I cannot go or get home I cannot help it, I am not to blame for it

that may be true I like to hear music I don't care to travel he did not care to eat

I should like to eat something ich möchte gern etwas effen ich möchte lieber hier bleiben I should prefer to stay here 183. Müffen : man mußte ihn lieb haben one could not but love him ich muß fort I must go man müßte ihm helfen, meine ich one ought to help him, I think man müßte verrückt sein, so etwas one would have to be crazy to zu glauben believe a thing like that 184. Sollen : Sie hätten bleiben sollen you ought to or should have stayed tell him he is to go sag' ihm, er soll fort was foll ich? (what am I to do?) what is wanted? what shall I do with it? was soll ich damit? was foll das? what does that mean? what is it for? sie soll hier sein or gewesen sein she is said to be here or to have been here man sollte meinen, er sei verrückt one would think he was crazy 185. 29ollen : er will Sie gern sprechen he would like or begs leave to see you er will Sie lieber felbst sprechen he prefers to see you personally er will Sie am liebsten selbst he very much prefers to see you fprechen personally ich wollte ausgehen, als sie kamen I was about to go when they came he wants to go or is about to go er will fort wo wollen Sie hin? where are you going? what in the world does the felwas will denn der Kerl? low want? he pretends to be an officer er will Offizier sein man will ihn gesehen haben they maintain that they have seen him

186. Rönnen, Rennen and Wiffen = know: fönnen fonnte gefonnt used chiefly of languages, lessons and games: ich fann Französisch, aber kein Deutsch I know French, but no German; kennen kannte gekannt used of persons, places or objects in general: ich kenne ihn nicht I don't know him, am not acquainted with him; wissen wußte gewußt used of facts: ich weiß, daß er da wohnt, aber ich kenne ihn nicht I know that he lives there, but I don't know him personally or by sight.

187. The Commonest Verbs with fein:

| ankommen <i>arrive</i> | reisen travel, go |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| aufstehen rise, get up | reiten ride |
| ausgehen go out | sein <i>be</i> |
| begegnen meet | springen jump |
| bleiben stay | sterben die |
| fahren go driving | treten step, tread |
| fallen fall | vergehen pass, elapse |
| fliegen <i>fly</i> | verschwinden disappear |
| fliehen <i>flee</i> | vorkommen occur, seem |
| folgen <i>follow</i> | wachsen grow |
| gehen go, walk | werden become, get |
| gelingen succeed | wiederkommen \ come back, |
| geschehen happen | zurücktommen 5 <i>return</i> |
| kommen come | ziehen march, go, move |
| laufen run | |

EXAMPLES: ist er angekommen? has he arrived? das Kind ist gefallen the child has had a fall.

VI ADVERBS

The following are some of the commonest adverbs, with their simplest uses merely mentioned and the more difficult ones illustrated.

188. Alber, fonbern. Aber follows a positive or a negative statement and limits it by opposition only. Sombern follows a negative statement only and usually introduces a substitute or a contrary. Aber — but yet, fondern — but on the contrary:

es ist jetzt nicht Sommer, aber es *it is not summer now, but yet* ist warm *it is warm*

es ist jetzt nicht Sommer, sondern it is not summer now, but on Binter the contrary it is winter or

189. Mis, wenn. Mis as, (at that particular time) when is used with past tenses only and refers to one occasion only; menn if, whenever is not confined to past tenses: als ich kam, war er fort when I came, he was gone wenn ich kam, war er fort whenever I came, he was gone Nichts als nothing but; als after compar. than. 190. Auch also, too, moreover, besides, even ich gehe, wenn es auch blitzt I shall go even if (though) it lightens ist er auch arm (- wenn er auch though he be poor, yet he is arm ist), so ist er doch gut honest ich gehe nicht, und bu auch nicht I shall not go, nor will you 191. Da there, oftener then; since, as da fam er then he came, then came he da er kam since or as he came schon wollte ich fort, da kam sie I was about to go (then =) when she came jetzt ist er da (- hier) now he is here 192. Dabei never thereby in the sense of by means of it or in consequence of it, which is badurch (193) er stand dabei he stood by or near it, was present sie las und dabei kam sie an ein she was reading and while doneues Wort ing so she came to a new word komm! sagte er und dabei lief er come! he said, and saying so, he ran away weg er ist reich und dabei gut he is rich and good too **193. Dadurch** (192) thereby, by it bas kam badurch, daß Sie zu that came from or was owing to schnell fuhren your driving too fast **194. Dafür** therefor, for it, for them einen Säbel hatte er nicht, dafür it's true, he had no sword, but hatte er aber eine Bistole he had a pistol instead that's what I am going to give bas gebe ich dir dafür, daß du so you for being so kind gut bist

195. Samit therewith, with it or them komm! sagte er und damit lief er come! he said, and saying so, weg he ran away fie entschuldigte sich damit, daß fie she excused herself saying that frank sei she was ill er begnügte sich damit, ihn gesehe was satisfied with having hen zu haben seen him fag' es, damit er es weiß (wisse) tell it in order that he may know it **196.** Daran at it, near it, about it eben denke ich daran I am just thinking of it by that he recognized it daran erkannte er es wer ist schuld daran, daß du arm who is to blame for your being bift? poor? 197. Darauf thereupon, on it, on them soon after that bald darauf on the following day den Tag darauf rechne nicht darauf, daß ich komme don't count on my coming 198. Day that, so that sie kam nie, ohne daß sie uns she never came without bring ing us something was brachte er stirbt lieber, als daß er mich he will die rather than betray perrät тe 199. Daza thereto, to or with it, in addition for that one needs a knife dazu braucht man ein Messer I congratulate you on havi ich wünsche dir Glück dazu, daß du gewählt bist been elected 200. Denn (228) what do you want, please? was willst du denn? why! where does he come f om? wo kommt der denn her? Defto see Ne, 209. 201. 202. **Doch** still, yet, but, for all that Sie find doch nicht krank? you are not ill. I trust he is ready, I dare say? er ist doch fertig?

just see! or do see! sieh doch! erzählen Sie doch tell us, pray wäre sie doch hier! would that she were here! ift er auch arm, so ist er doch aut though he be poor, he is good at least er mag gehen, denn er arbeitet he may go, for he does not work doch nicht anyway 203. Giumal, mal once, once upon a time, sometime noch einmal once more, again as much again, twice as much noch ein mal soviel auf einmal all at once, suddenly komm einmal (mal) her, Fritz just come here, Fred 204. Grft first erst als er sprach, sah ich ihn not until he spoke, did I see him only since yesterday erst seit gestern (dann) erst recht (then) all the more 205. Gar very, even, with negatives at all gar nicht; gar nichts not at all; nothing at all gar keinnone at all ganz und gar entirely, altogether 206. Gern gladly; compar. lieber rather; superl. am liebsten best or most of all I am fond of reading, like to ich lese gern read ich schreibe lieber I prefer to write I like playing best of all ich spiele am liebsten 207. Frgend adds the notion of any, ever, at all, some irgend einer or jemand anybody at all, any one you please irgendwie ; irgendwo somehow; somewhere 208. Ja yes, indeed hier ift er ja why, here he is Rarl? der ist ja noch krank Charles? he is still sick, you know by all means, stay here ^rleiben Sie ja hier

!

| 209. Je ever, at any time | |
|---|--|
| je früher, je (desto) besser | the earlier the better |
| 210. Lieber, am liebsten, see | Gern , 206 |
| 211. Noch still, yet, see also | Einmal |
| noch nicht | not yet |
| noch ein Stück | another (one more) piece |
| weder noch | neithernor |
| noch immer | even now, even then, still |
| 212. Nun now, and now | |
| nun, wie geht's? | well, how do you do? |
| 213. Nur only, but | |
| kommen Sie nur | just come, you had better come |
| wie kann man so etwas nur tun? | how can a man possibly do such a thing? |
| 214. Schon already, by this | time, often not translated |
| schon im Jahre 1830 | even in 1830, as early as 1830 |
| | only ten days later |
| schon am Anfang | at the very beginning |
| der wird schon gehen | he'll go fast enough |
| 215. So so, thus; often un principal clause | translated when introducing a |
| gehst du, so bleid' ich | if you go, I shall stay |
| kaum fah er mich, fo lief er weg | hardly had he seen me, when he ran away |
| fo höre | listen then |
| ein so großes Haus or so ein großes Haus | such a large house |
| so einer | such a one, such a fellow |
| so etwas | such a thing |
| 216. Sondern, see Aber, 18 | 8. Wenn, see Als, 189. |
| 217. 29ie how | |
| wie er kam, ging ich | as he came, I went |
| wie? du weinst? | what? you are crying? |

Musik, wie ich sie noch nie gehört music, such as I had never heard hatte before however that may be wie dem auch sei 218. 29ohl, adj., adv., well sie sah wohl, daß es zu spät war she probably saw that it was too late sie singt wohl, aber wie? she sings indeed, but how? das hat er wohl (emphatic) gesagt he did say that 219. Swar to be sure, it is true gib mir ein Buch, und zwar ein give me a book, and that a good gutes one

VII PREPOSITIONS

220. Prepositions with the Genitive:

| anftatt, ftatt instead of außerhalb outside of biessfeits on this side of halben for the sake of halber for the sake of innerhalb inside of, within jenseits on the further side of, beyond traft by virtue of laut according to | wegen on account of längs along zufolge in consequence of |
|---|---|
| mittelst by means of | trots in spite of |

The last three sometimes take the dative.

221. With halben, wegen or willen are formed meinethalben, meinetwegen, um meinetwillen on my account or behalf, for my sake; beinethalben, beinetwegen, um beinetwillen on your account or behalf, for your sake, etc. with feinet-, ihret-, unfert-, euret-, Shret-

222. Prepositions with the Dative:

| aus out of, from | nächst <i>next to</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| außer <i>besides</i> | nebst along with |
| bei by, at | ob above |
| binnen within | samt along with |

entgegen against, to meet gegenüber opposite gemäß in accordance with mit with nach after, to feit since von of, from, off zu to zuwider contrary to

223. A few special phrases:

aus welchem Grunde? außer sich sein bei schlechtem Wetter bei diesen Worten bei meinem Bruder ich dachte bei mir ich bleibe dabei mit der Bahn mit Vorsatz nach allen Seiten nach oben, nach unten er fragte nach dir nach (meinem) Wunsch feinem Aussehen nach von Herzen gern zum letzten Male zum Fenster hinaus zu Ende sein zu Fuß, zu Pferd (nach) dem Walde zu

for what reason? be beside one's self in bad weather with these words, while saying so at my brother's (house) I thought to myself I stick to it by train on purpose in all directions · upward, downward he inquired for you according to (my) wish judging by his appearance with all my heart for the last time out of the window be at an end, be over on foot, on horseback in the direction of the forest

224. Prepositions with the Accusative:

| bis till, unto | ohne without |
|-----------------------|-----------------|
| durch through | sonder without |
| für <i>for</i> | um about, round |
| gegen against, toward | wider against |

225. A few special phrases :

| er hält ihn für ehrlich | he thinks him honest |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| für fich (stage direction) | aside |
| Schritt für Schritt | step by step |
| ich habe nichts dagegen | I have no objection (to it) |

| er kam, ohne daß er mir geschrie- | he came without having written | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| ben hatte | to me | |
| es tut mir leid um ihn | I am sorry for him | |
| jetzt ist's um dich geschehen | now you are done for | |
| es handelt sich um unsere Freiheit | our liberty is at stake | |
| um so viel mehr | by so much the more | |

226. Prepositions with the Dative or the Accusative:

| an on, at | neben <i>beside</i> | |
|------------------|--------------------------|--|
| auf on, upon, up | über above, over, across | |
| hinter behind | unter under, among | |
| in in, into | vor before, in front of | |

zwischen between

These govern the dative in answer to the questions where? and when? i.e. with verbs denoting either rest or else motion within certain limits, e.g. motion in a circle or motion to and fro. They govern the accusative in answer to the questions whither? and how long? i.e. with verbs denoting motion toward an object or any limit.

227. DATIVE

- ich sitze an dem Tische I am sitting at the table
- bas Buch liegt auf dem Tische the book is lying on the table
- fie spielen hinter dem Hause they are playing behind the house
- bu warst in diesem Zimmer you were in this room
- ich stand neben I stood beside you
- bas Bild hängt über der Tür the picturs is hanging over the door
- ich hörte fie unter meinem Fenfter I hoard them under my window
- ftand fie vor ber Tir? was she standing in front of the door?

ACCUSATIVE

- ich setse mich an den Tisch I seat myself at the table
- ich lege es auf den Lisch I lay it upon the table
- er lief hinter das Haus he ran behind the house
- bu gingst in jenes Zimmer you went into that room
- er setst sich neben mich he sits down beside me
- er fuhr übers Meer he went across the sea
- bas Buch fiel unter ben Tijch the book fell under the table
- gehen Sie vor die Tür step out in front of the door

ich fand es zwischen ben beiden ich stellte den Stuhl zwischen die Bäumen I found it between the two trees

beiden Bäume I placed the chair between the two trees

VIII CONJUNCTIONS

228. Conjunctions are of three kinds:

(1) General connectives:

aber but, but yet denn for fondern but, on the contrary allein only, but oder or und and

These never affect the order of words (232^{**}) .

229. (2) Adverbial conjunctions, as

| also so, so then, hence | indessen however |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| auch also, too, moreover | jedoch nevertheless |
| ba then, there | noch yet, still; nor |
| daher hence | nun now |
| dann then | 10 80 |
| barauf thereupon | vielleicht perhaps |
| barum therefore | vielmehr rather |
| dennoch yet, notwithstanding | wohl perhaps, indeed |
| endlich finally | zwar to be sure |
| freilich to be sure | |

These, when standing at the head of a clause, regularly require the inverted order of words (243).

230. (3) Subordinating conjunctions, as

| als when, as | obgleich although | |
|----------------|-------------------------|--|
| bis until | seit(dem) since | |
| da since, as | während while | |
| daß that | wann when | |
| ehe before | weil because | |
| indem while | wenn if, when, whenever | |
| nachdem after | wenn auch even if | |
| ob whether, if | wie how, as | |

mo where

These introduce dependent clauses and transpose the personal verb to the end of its clause (240).

IX THE ORDER OF WORDS

A. ORDER OF VERB AND SUBJECT .

231. According to the relative position of the principal elements of the sentence—verb and subject * — there are three orders: (1) the normal, in which the verb follows the subject; (2) the inverted, in which the verb precedes the subject—these two in independent clauses chiefly; (3) the transposed order, in which the verb stands last — this in dependent clauses only (240).

The Normal Order is used

232. In declarative and interrogative sentences beginning with the subject:

der Befiser jenes Hauses, ein reicher alter Raufmann, wird morgen mit seiner Frau und feiner Tochter nach England rei= fen, [aber] er bleibt dort nicht lange, [denn] er ift schon seit einem Jahre trank, [und] er will ben Winter in Italien zubringen the owner of that house, a rich old merchant, will go to England to-morrow, with his wife and his daughter, but he will not stay there long, for he has not been well all this year and he intends to spend the winter in Italy

The Inverted Order is used

In declarative and interrogative sentences beginning with any other element**:

morgen wird der Befüger jenes Hauses, ein reicher alter Rauf= mann, mit seiner Frau und seiner Tochter nach England reisen, [aber] lange bleibt er da nicht, [benn] schon seit einem Jahre ist er trank, [und] den Winter will er in Italien zubringen to-morrow the owner of that house, a rich etc.

ich habe kein Silber und Gold I Silber und Gold habe ich nicht have no silver and gold silver and gold have I none

* Verb means the personal or finite part of the verb only; subject, the subject with its adjuncts. — ** Except aber, allein, benn, ober, fondern and unb, which nowhere affect the order, and, thus being neutral connectives, are bracketed in the examples of 232.

NORMAL ORDER

- ich weiß, daß er kommt I know that he is coming
- ich ging nicht zu ihm, ba ich wußte, bağ er fam I did not go to him, since I knew that he was coming
- fie ift nicht schön, [allein] sie ist gut she is not beautiful, but she is good
- er fuhr schnell nach der Stadt, um den Arzt zu holen he drove quickly to town in order to get the physician
- **bu willft** mir befehlen? you mean to order me about?
- wer hat ein großes Haus? who has a large house?
- was macht ben Menschen glücklich? what makes man happy?

233. Sometimes in declarative sentences with imperative force:

bu bleibst hier! or Sie bleiben hier! you stay here!

234. Sometimes in optative sentences with the verb in the 3. person:

Gott gebe, daß er kommt! God grant that he comes !

er lebe hoch! long may he live!

INVERTED ORDER

- daß er kommt, weiß ich (or das weiß ich) that he is coming I know
- da ich wußte, daß er kam, ging ich nicht zu ihm since I knew that etc.
- (chön ift fie nicht, [allein] gut ift fie she is not beautiful, but she is good
- um den Arzt zu holen, fuhr er schnell nach der Stadt in order to get the physician he drove etc.
- willft bu mir befehlen? do you mean to order me about?
- wer (pred. nom.) ift jener Mann? who is that man?
- was (pred. nom.) ift der Meusch? what is man

Regularly in imperative sentences when the subject is expressed (170):

bleib du hier! stay thou here! bleiben Sie hier! stay here!

Regularly in optative (imperative) sentences, without regard to the person of the verb:

- gebe Gott, daß er fommt! may God grant etc.
- wären wir doch zu Hause! would that we were at home! so sei es! so let it be! gehen wir let us go

235. In sentences begin-

NORMAL ORDER

INVERTED ORDER

ning with the anticipatory subject es (119):

es famen brei Brüber there came three brothers, cs lebe bie Freiheit! long live free dom!

In dependent concessive clauses :

fei er noch fo reich, ich mag ihn nicht (be he or) though he be never etc.

Always if the first part of obgleich, wenngleich, obschon or wenn auch is omitted : twäre es auch wahr (for wenn es auch wahr wäre), so ginge ich boch nicht even if it were true, still I should not go; ift er gleich arm (for wenngleich or obgleich er arm ist), so ist er boch gut though he be poor, (yet) he is good

238. In dependent conditional clauses omitting wenn or ob, for which see 157, 158.

239. Often in exclamations: wie schön ift sie! how beautiful she is! hat ber aber eine Nase! what a nose that fellow has! bacht' ich's boch! I thought so!

240. The Transposed Order is used in dependent clauses introduced by a subordinating element — as a conjunction (230) or a relative or indirect interrogative : — alle fahen, daß es un= möglich war all saw that it was impossible, fie faufte es nicht, weil fie tein Gelb hatte she did not buy it because she had no money,

236. In dependent concessive clauses:

er fei noch so reich, ich mag ihn nicht though he be never so rich, I don't like him

237. In dependent substantive clauses omitting daß: ich sage, er ist fleißig (for daß er fleißig ist) I say (that) he is diligent man fragte, wo ber Mann zu finden sei, der ihm das gesagt habe they asked where the man could be found that had told him this.

241. Notes. (1) When sentences of the inverted order, with the same subject, are connected by und, and und is followed immediately by another element than the new verb, the subject is repeated (in the form of a pronoun): gestern sam mein Freund zu mir und gleich erzählte er mir bie Geschichte yesterday my friena came to me and at once (he) told me the story

242. (2) If several elements begin a sentence of the inverted c.der, they should be similar in kind, e.g. all adverbs of time or all adverbs of place, as gestern, als ich nach Hause fam, war er noch hier yesterday, when I came home, he was still here, but not "damals, in jenem Hause wohnte ein Musiker," which should be damals wohnte in jenem Hause ein Musiker or in jenem Hause wohnty damals ein Musiker then there lived a musician in that house.

243. (3) Certain words may or may not cause inversion, e.g. both but, yet, still freilich to be sure jeboth yet, however gewiß certainly, surely entweder either zwar to be sure, it is true

The more of a pause the speaker makes after such words, the more they become detached from what follows, like exclamations, which never cause inversion. Hence we find both geht e3 and both e3 geht but it goes, entweber mein Bruder fommt, oder ich fomme and entweder fommt mein Bruder, oder ich fomme either my brother will come or I shall.

244. (4) Concessive clauses often fail to cause inversion: wenn bu auch läufft, **bu fommft** boch zu spät (or so fommft bu doch zu spät) even if you run, you will be late anyway.

245. (5) In dependent clauses introduced by a subordinating element and containing an infinitive used for a past participle (27. 5), the personal or finite verb regularly precedes the non-personal forms: wenn ich ihn sofort hätte fommen lassen, so ware es nicht geschehen if I had sent for him at once, it would not have happened.

B. ORDER OF ADJUNCTS OF VERB AND SUBJECT

The subordinate elements of a sentence - adjuncts of 246. verb and subject-are arranged alike in all three orders, participles, infinitives and prefixes standing nearest the end, before these the elements next in importance or emphasis and before them again the less important or emphatic, so that, in general, the modifier precedes the word it modifies or the dependent word that on which it depends:

| NORMAL | INVERTED | TRANSPOSED |
|---|---|---|
| morgen den Brief nicht ¹ abschicken ² kön= | 1ª morgen werbe ich ben Brief nicht ¹ abschicken ² können to- morrow I shall not etc. | morgen den Brief nicht ¹ abschicken ² kön= |

¹Adverbs of negation, like nicht, nie, feineswegs, nirgends etc., when modifying a clause or sentence as a whole, stand last, e. g. er gab ihr ben Brief aus Amerita gestern abend nicht, or next to last, i. e. immediately before the verb-forms, as above. But if such adverbs modify any particular word or phrase they immediately precede it, e.g. er gab ihr den Brief aus Amerika nicht gestern abend, sondern heute. - 2 Stands before können because depending on it — this makes the German order of the non-personal parts of the verb usually the reverse of the English. - ⁸ Also nicht werde abschiden können, 245.

248. 2. er hat mich heute¹ in meinem day, at my room, he very politely asked my advice

2ª heute hat er mich in meinem Zimmer ² Zimmer 2 fehr höflich * fehr höflich * um Rat um Rat gefragt ⁴ to- gefragt ⁴ to-day etc.

. 2b. Sie wissen, daß er mich heute 1 in mei= nem Zimmer * sehr höflich * um Rat ge= fragt * hat you know that he etc.

1, 2, 8 The usual order of adverbs is time, place, manner. — 4 um-Rat-gefragt forms one verbal idea, and um-Rat, though not actually joined to gefragt, as ab to ichiden in 247, is treated like a separable prefix; hence also ich fragte ihn gestern abend um Rat (at the end, just as ab in ich schidte ben Brief gestern abend ab).

249. 3. er hat so= 3ª soeben hat er 3^{b.} ich frage, ob er eben feinem Bruder 1 feinem Bruder 1 ein soeben feinem Bruder 1 NORMALINVERTEDTRANSPOSEDein Buch 2 gegeben he Buch 2 gegeben justein Buch 2 gegeben hathas just now given his now etc.I ask if he etc.brother a bookI ask if he etc.

¹, ²Of two objects, one indirect and the other direct, and both nouns, the direct is the more important and usually follows the indirect.

250. 4. er hat 4^a foeben hat er es¹ 4^b ich fage, daß er es¹foeben feinem Bru- feinem Bruder² gege- es¹ foeben feinem der² gegeben he has ben just now he etc. Bruder² gegeben hat I just given it to his say that he etc. brother

¹, ²Of two objects, one a pronoun and the other a noun, the pronoun, whether it be the direct or the indirect object, is the less emphatic and precedes. —Among pronouns, a personal pronoun precedes a demonstrative : id) gab es bem I gave it to that fellow; a reflexive, being least emphatic, usually precedes all : ber Frembe fieldte fid) mir vor the stranger introduced himself to me; and of two personal pronouns, the shorter precedes the longer or the one having the fuller sound : id) gab es ihnen, id) gab es ihr, id) gab es ihm.

251. In the inverted order, an unemphatic adverb or pronoun may separate verb and noun-subject (not pronoun-subject): bamais famen oft die Bögel an mein Fenster (or damals famen die Bögel oft an mein Fenster) *in those days the birds often came to my window*, dann gab mir dein Bruder das Buch (or dann gab dein Bruder mir das Buch) *then your brother gave me the book*. In the normal order, however, an adverb strictly modifying the verb is not allowed to stand between the subject and the verb: er fand nirgends Ruhe (but not "er nirgends fand Ruhe") *he nowhere found rest*. Aber *however*, also *therefore*, bagegen on the other hand, indeffen *however*, jedoch but and nämlich namely, that is to say are found between the subject and the verb, e. g. er aber ging — ich bagegen blieb etc., but they are then connectives of sentences or clauses rather than true adverbs.

252. The adjuncts of the noun-subject or of nouns in general, as also those of the infinitive, are arranged as shown in 169 and 174, that is, in general, according to the principle stated in 246.

A LIST

OF THE

COMMONEST STRONG VERBS

IN GROUPS ACCORDING TO VOWEL-CHANGE

About 30 of the most important, which should be learned first, are marked with an asterisk.

| INFIN. | PAST IND. | | PAST PART. | |
|----------------------|-----------|-----|------------------|--------------------|
| fangen | fing | | gefangen | catch, capture |
| anfangen | fing an | | angefangen | begin |
| empfangen | empfing | | empfangen | receive |
| hangen } hängen } | hing | | gehang en | hang, be suspended |
| *fallen | fiel | ift | gefallen | fall |
| gefallen, dat. | gefiel | -1- | gefallen | please |
| halten | hielt | | gehalten | hold, keep |
| erhalten | erhielt | | erhalten | obtain, receive |
| *laffen | ließ | | gelassen | let, cause to |
| *verlaffen | verließ | | verlaffen | leave, desert |
| raten, dat. | riet | | geraten | advise, guess |
| verraten | verriet | | verraten | betray |
| *ichlafen | ſġlief | | geschlafen | sleep |
| *fahren | fuhr | ift | gefahren | drive, go, pass |
| erfahren | erfuhr | • | erfahren | experience |
| fortfahren | fuhr sort | | fortgefahren | continue |
| (ein)laden | lud (ein) | | (ein)geladen | invite |
| *schlagen | schlug | | geschlagen | strike, defeat |
| *tragen | trug | | getragen | carry, wear |
| *laufen | lief | ift | gelaufen | run |
| *ftehen | ftand | | gestanden | stand |
| aufstehen | stand auf | ift | aufgestanden | rise, get up |
| *verstehen | verstand | • | verstanden | understand |
| *geben | gab | | gegeben | give |
| | | 1 | .90 | |

COMMONEST STRONG VERBS

| INFIN. | PAST IND. | | PAST PART. | |
|----------------------|-----------------|------|--------------------|------------------------|
| umgeb en | umgab | | umgeben | surround |
| *jehen | fab | | gefehen | 866 |
| ansehen | jah an | | angesehen | look at |
| aussehen | jah aus | | ausgefehen | look, appear |
| geschehen | geschah. | ift | geschehen | happen, take place |
| treten | trat | | getreten | tread, step |
| lesen | las | -1- | gelesen | read |
| effen | aß | · | gegeffen | eat |
| vergeffen | vergaß | | vergeffen | forget |
| 0 11 | | | | |
| bef e hlen | befahl | | befohlen | command |
| brechen | brach | | gebrochen | break |
| unterb rechen | unterbrach | | unterbrochen | inte rr upt |
| *sprechen | (prach | | gesprochen | speak, say |
| versprechen | versprach | | versprochen | promise |
| *nehmen | nahm | | genommen | take |
| *helfen, dat. | half | | geholfen | help |
| treffen | traf | | getroffen | hit, m eet |
| #sterben | ftarb | ព្រៃ | gestorben | dis |
| werfen | warf | | geworfen | throw |
| *gehen | ging | ift | gegangen | go, walk |
| aufgehen | ging auf | | aufgegangen | rise, mount, open |
| vergehen | verging | | vergangen | elapse |
| fechten | føðit | | geføchten | fight |
| heben | роб | | gehoben | lift, heave |
| , | | | 0 | • , |
| leiden | litt | | gelitten | suffer |
| schneiden | j chnitt | | geschnitten | cut |
| +reiten | ritt | ព្រៃ | geritten | ride |
| ftreiten | firitt | | gestritten | strive, quarrel |
| beißen | biß | | gebiffen | bite |
| reißen | riß | | geriffen | tear, snatch |
| zerreißen | zerriß | | zerrissen | tear in pieces |
| heißen | hieß | | geheißen | be called, be named |
| *bleiben | blieb | ព្ | gebl ie ben | remain, stay |
| *fcheinen | schien 🛛 | • | geschienen | shine, seem |
| erscheinen | erschien | | erschienen | appear |
| *fchreiben | j chrieb | | geschrieben | write |
| schreien | fchrie | | geschrieen | scream |
| fteigen | ftieg | ift | gestiegen | rise, mou nt |
| treiben | trieb | | getrieben | drive, imp el |
| | | | | |

i

ł

191

192 AN ABSTRACT OF GERMAN GRAMMAR

| in fin. | PAST IND. | | PAST PART. | |
|--------------------|------------|------|------------------|--------------------------------|
| *bitten | bat | | gebeten | beg, request |
| *fitzen | jaß | | gefeffen | sit |
| besitzen | befaß | | beseffen | p 088888 |
| beginnen | begann | | begønnen | begin |
| gewinnen | gewann | | gewonnen | win, gain |
| binden | band | | gebunden | bind, tie |
| verbinden | verband | | verbunden | unite, connect |
| #finden | fand | | gefunden | find |
| befinden, fich | befand | | befunden | be, as to health |
| gelingen, dat. | gelang | ព្រៃ | gelungen | succeed |
| #fingen | jang | | gesungen | sing |
| #springen | sprang | ព្រ | gesprungen | leap, spring |
| *trinken | trant | | getrunken | drink |
| *liegen | lag | | gelegen | lie, be situated |
| bieten | bot | | geboten | offer, bid |
| verbieten | verbot | | verboten | forbid |
| fliegen | flog | ift | geflogen | fly (flew, flown) |
| fliehen | floh | ព្រែ | geflohen | flee (fled, fled) |
| ziehen | sog | | gezogen | draw, pull |
| ziehen | sog | ift | gezogen | march, move, go |
| *verlieren | verlor | • | verloren | lose |
| fließen | floß | ព្រៃ | gefloffen | flow |
| schießen | 1choB | | geschoffen | shoot |
| schließen | ſchloß | | geschloffen " | shut, close conclude, infer |
| | | | | determine, resolve |
| beschließen | beschloß | | beschloffen | • |
| eutschließen, sich | entschloß | | entschlossen | determine, decide |
| *fommen | łam | ព្រែ | getommen | come |
| ankommen | tam an | • | angekommen | a rr ive |
| bekommen | betam | • | betommen | get, receive |
| vorkommen | ťam vor | ព្រែ | vorgekommen | appear, occur |
| *tun | tat | | getan | do |
| *rufen | rief | | gernfen | call |
| lügen | ខេត្ត | | geløgen | lie, s peak falsely |

AN ALPHABETICAL LIST

OF

STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS

This is a fuller list than the preceding one, but it gives no compounds, except where the simple verb is rare or not in use. The 2. and 3. sing. pres. ind., the 2. sing. imperat. and the past subj. are given only when there is a change of vowel from the infinitive or the past ind. respectively. The 2. sing. pres. ind. of stems ending in an s-sound is often shortened so that it becomes identical with the 3. person, e. g. bläfeft becomes bläft etc. But with stems in få the f of the ending ft is retained so that wäldheft, for example, becomes mäjdift, which is then also often pronounced, though not written like the 3. sing., wäldt.

| INFIN. | PAST IND. | PAJT PART. | PRES. IND. 2. AND 3. SING. | IMPERAT. 2. SING. | PAST SUBJ. 1. OR 3. SING. |
|--|-----------|------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|
| Bacten bake | but | gebacten | bäcfft, bäckt | | büte |
| Befehlen command | befahl | befohlen | befiehlft, befiehlt | befiehl | befähle, be- föhle |
| Befleißen (fich) ap- ply one's self | . befliß | befliffen | | | • • |
| Beginnen begin | begann | begonne n | | | begänne, Ee= gönne |
| Beißen bite | biß | gebiffen | | | |
| Bergen hide | barg | geborgen | birgft, birgt | birg | bärge, bürge |
| Bersten burst | barft i | ft geborften | birstest, birst | birft | bärfte, börfte |
| Bewegen induce | bewog | bewogen | | | bewöge |
| | Weak an | d regular in | the sense of move | 3. | |
| Biegen bend | bog | gebogen | | | böge · |
| Bieten o <i>ffer</i> | bot | geboten | | | böte |
| Binden bind | band | gebunden | | | bände |
| Bitten beg | bat | gebeten | | | bäte |
| Blajen blow | blies | geblasen | bläsest, bläft | | |
| Bleiben remain | blieb i | ft geblieben | | | |
| Braten roast | briet | gebraten | brätst, brät | | |
| Brechen break | brach | gebrochen | brichst, bricht | brich | bräche |
| Brennen burn | brannte | gebrannt | | | brenn te |
| Bringen bring | brachte | gebracht | • | | brächte |
| Denken think | dachte | gedacht | | | dächte |

| INFIN. | PAST IND. | F | PAST PART. | | MPERAT. 2. SING. | PAST SUBJ. 1. OB 8. SING. |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|------|-------------|------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| Dreschen thresh | brojá | | gedroschen | drischeft, drischt | brijch | bröjche |
| Dringen press | brang | ព្រ | gedrungen | | ••• | bränge |
| Dürfen be allowed | durfte | • | gedurft | darfft, darf | | dürfte |
| Empfehlen recom- mend | | | empfohlen | empfiehlst, em= pfiehlt | empfiehl | empfähle, empföhle |
| Erbleichen pale | erblich | ព្រៃ | erblichen | | | |
| Erlöschen extin- guish, go out | erlosch | ift | erloschen | erlischest, erlischt | erlifch | erlöjche |
| Erschrecten become frightened | erfchrat | ព្រែ | erschrocken | erschrickt, er= schrickt | erjájria | eríchrä ie |
| Essen eat | aß | | gegessen | issest, ißt | iß | äße |
| Fahren <i>drive</i> | fuhr | | gefahren | fährst, fährt | | führe |
| Fallen fall | fiel | ift | gefallen | fällst, fällt | | |
| Fangen catch | fing | | gefangen | fängft, fän gt | | |
| Fechten <i>fight</i> | focht | | gefochten | fictift, fict | fiðt | föchte |
| Finden find | fand | | gefunden | | | fände |
| Flechten twine | flocht | | geflochten | flichtft, flicht | fliðt | flöchte |
| Fliegen fly | flog | tft | geflogen | | | flöge |
| Fliehen <i>flee</i> | floh | ift | geflohen | | | flöhe |
| Fließen flow | floß | ift | gefloffen | | | flöffe |
| Fragen ask | fragte or frug | • | gefragt | fragst, fragt, or frägst, frägt | | fragte o r früge |
| Fressen devour | fraß | | gefreffen | friffest, frißt, | friß | fräße |
| Frieren freeze | fror | | gefroren | | | fröre |
| Gären <i>ferment</i> | gor | | gegoren | | | göre |
| Gebären bear | gebar | | geboren | gebierft, gebiert | gebier | gebäre |
| Geben give | gab | | gegeben | gibst, gibt | gib | gäbe |
| Gebeihen <i>thrive</i> | gedieh | | gediehen | | | |
| Gehen go | ging | | gegangen | | | |
| Gelingen, succeed | gelang | ift | gelungen | | | gelänge |
| Gelten be worth | galt | | gegolten | giltst, gilt | gilt | gälte or gölte |
| Genesen recover | genas | ift | genesen | | | genäfe |
| Genießen <i>enjoy</i> | genoß | | genossen | | | genöffe |
| Geschehen happen | geschah | ព្រ | geschehen | geschieht | | geschähe |
| Sewinnen ga in | gewann | | gewonnen | | | gewänne or gewönne |
| Gießen pour | goß | | gegoffen | | | göffe |
| Gleichen resemble | glich | | geglichen | | | |
| Gleiten glide | glitt | ift | geglitten | | | |
| Glimmen gleam | glomm | | geglommen | | | glömme |
| Graben dig | grub | | gegraben | gräbst, gräbt | | grübe |
| Greifen seize | griff | | gegriffen | | | |
| Haben have | hatte | | gehabt | hast, hat | | hätte |
| Halten hold | hielt | | gehalten | hältst, hält | | |

| inpin. | PAST IND. | I | PAST PART. | PRES. IND. 2. AND 3. SING. | IMPERAT. 2. SING. | PAST SUBJ. 1. OR 3. SING. |
|--|-------------|------|------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|
| Hangen hang, be Hängen suspende | , . | | gehangen | hangft, hangt hängft, hängt | hange häng(e |) |
| Hauen hew | hieb | | gehauen | | | |
| Heben <i>lift</i> | hob, hub | | gehoben | | | höbe, hübe |
| Heißen bid, call | hieß | | geheißen | | | |
| Helfen help | half | | geholfen | hilfft, hilft | hilf | hälfe, hülfe |
| Rennen know | tannte | | gefannt | | | fennte |
| Klimmen <i>climb</i> | flomm | ift | geflommen | | | flömme |
| Klingen sound | flang | | geklungen | | | flänge (flünge) |
| Rneifen pinch | tniff | | gekniffen | | | |
| Kommen come | fam | ift | gekommen | regular (also fömmft, fömn | ıt) | fāme |
| Können can | fonnte | | gekonnt | tannst, tann | • | fönnte |
| Kriechen creep | froch | ift | getrochen | | | fröche |
| Rüren choose | tor | • | geforen | | | före |
| Laden load, invite | lud | | geladen | lädft, lädt | | lüde |
| Also v | reak and i | eg | • | in past partici | ple gelad | en. |
| Lassen let | ließ | - | gelaffen | läffeft, läßt | | |
| Laufen <i>run</i> | lief | ift | gelaufen | läufft, läuft | | |
| Leiden suffer | litt | • | gelitten | | | |
| Leihen lend | lieh | | geliehen | | | |
| Lefen read | la s | | gelejen | lieseft, lieft | lies | läje |
| Liegen lis | lag | | gelegen | | | läge |
| Lügen lis | log | | gelogen | | | löge |
| Meiden shun | mied | | gemieden | | | |
| Meffen measure | maß | | gemeffen | miffest, mißt | miß | mäße |
| Mißlingen fail | mißlang | ព្រ | mißlungen | | | mißlänge |
| Mögen like, may | mochte | | gemocht | magft, mag | | möchte |
| Müffen must | mußte | | gemußt | mußt, muß | | müßte |
| Nehmen take | nahm | | genommen | nimmft, nimm | t nimm | nähme |
| Nennen name | nannte | | genannt | | | nennte |
| Pfeifen whistle | pfiff | | gepfiffen | | | |
| Preisen <i>praise</i> | pries | | gepriesen | | | |
| Quellen gush | quoll | ift | gequollen | quillst, quillt | quill | quö lle |
| Raten advise | riet | | geraten | rätst, rät | | |
| Reiben rud | rieb | | gerieben | | | |
| Reißen tear | riß | | geriffen | | | |
| Reiten ride | ritt | ift | geritten | | | |
| Rennen run | rannte | ព្រ | gerannt | | | rennte |
| Riechen smell | roch | • | gerochen | | | röche |
| Ringen wring | rang | | gerungen | | | ränge |
| Rinnen run | rann | ព្រែ | geronnen | | | ränne, rönne |
| Rufen call | rief | · | gerufen | | | • |
| Saufen drink | îoff | | gejoffen | jäufst, jäuft | | föffe |

1

,

| INFIN. | PAST IND. | : | PAST PART. | PRES. IND. 1 2. AND 8. SING. | MPERAT 2. SING. | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------|------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| Saugen suck | fog | | gesogen | | | jõge |
| Schaffen create | ſchuf | | geschaffen | | | j chüfe |
| Schallen sound | fcoll | | geschollen | | | fchölle |
| Scheiden part | fchied | ព្រែ | geschieden | | | |
| Scheinen appear | fchien | - | geschienen | | | |
| Schelten scold | fðjalt | | gescholten | schiltst, schilt | ſģilt | fcälte, schölte |
| Scheren shear | (chor | | geschoren | schierst, schiert | fchier | schöre |
| Schieben shove | fchob | | geschoben | | | j chöbe |
| Schießen shoot | íchoß | | geschoffen | | | (¢ðijje |
| Schinden flay | íchund | | geschunden | | | <u>j</u> chünde |
| Schlafen sleep | schlief | | geschlafen | joläfft, joläft | | |
| Schlagen strike | schlug | | geschlagen | fclägft, fclägt | | fcflüge |
| Schleichen sneak | f dlid | ift | geschlichen | | | |
| Schleifen whet | j djliff | | geschliffen | | | |
| Schließen shut | jøj log | | gefchloffen | | | íðlöffe |
| Schlingen sling | j chlang | | geschlungen | | | schlänge |
| Schmeißen smite | íchmiß | | geschmiffen | | | |
| Schmelzen melt | fchmolz. | ព្រែ | geschmolzen | fomilzeft, fomilz | t schmi | lz fchmölze |
| • | When tra | nsit | tive, usually | weak and regu | lar. | |
| Schnauben snort | já nob | | geschnoben | | | jch nöbe |
| Schneiden cut | (d)nitt | | geschnitten | | | |
| Schrauben screw | (c)rob | | geschroben | | | j chröbe |
| Schreiben write | schrieb | | geschrieben | | | |
| Schreien cry | schrie | | gefchrieen | | | |
| Schreiten <i>stride</i> | schritt | ift | geschritten | | | |
| Schweigen be silent | schwieg | | geschwiegen | | | |
| Schwellen swell | (c)woll | | | schwillst, schwillt | jd jwil | l schwölle |
| | | | | ak and regular. | | |
| Schwimmen swim | fch wamn | រ ព្រ | geschwom- men | | | schwämme or schwömme |
| Schwinden vanish | schwand | ព្រែ | geschwunden | n | | schwände |
| Schwingen swing | schwang | | gefchmungen | n | | schwänge |
| Schwören swear | schwor or schwur | | geschworen | | | schwöre or schwüre |
| Sehen see | jah | | gesehen | fiehst, sieht | fieh | fähe |
| Sein be | war | ift | gewesen | bift, ift | fet | wäre |
| Senden send | fandte | · | gefandt | | - | fendete |
| Singen sing | fang | | gefungen | | | fänge |
| Sinken sink | fant | ift | gefunten | | | jänte |
| Sinnen think | fann | • | gesonnen | | | jänne or jönne |
| Sitzen sit | jaß | | gefeffen | | | jäße |
| Sollen shall | jollte | | gesollt | jollst, joll | | |
| Speien spit | įpie | | gespieen | | | |
| Spinnen spin | [pann | | gesponnen | | | jpänne or fpönne |

•

| infin. | PAST IND. | | PAST PART. | | MPERAT. 2. SING. | . PAST SUBJ. 1. OR 3. SING- |
|-----------------------|-----------------|------------|------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| Sprechen speak | íprach | | gesprochen | íprichít, ípricht | (prich | ípräche |
| Sprießen sprout | [proß | | gesproffen | | | fpröffe |
| Springen spring | fprang | ព្រ | gesprungen | | | fpränge |
| Stechen prick | ftach | | gestochen | ftichft, fticht | ftich | ftäche |
| Stehen stand | stand | | gestanden | | | ftände or |
| | (stund) | | | | | ftünde |
| Stehlen steal | stahl | | gestohlen | ftiehlft, stiehlt | ftiehl | ftähle or ftöhle |
| Steigen ascend | ftieg | ift | gestiegen | | | |
| Sterben die | starb | ift | gestorden | stirbst, stirbt | ftirb | ftärbe or ftürbi |
| Stieben disperse | ftob | | gestoben | | | ftöbe |
| Stinken stink | ftant | | gestunken | | | stänke |
| Stoßen push | ftieß | | gestoßen | ftößest, stößt | | |
| Streichen stroke | ftrich | | gestrichen | | | |
| Streiten strive | ftritt | | gestritten | | | |
| Tun do | tat | | getan | | | täte |
| Tragen carry | trug | | getragen | trägft, trägt | | trüge |
| Treffen hit | traf | | getroffen | triffst, trifft | triff | träfe |
| Treiben drive | trieb | | getrieben | | | |
| Treten <i>tread</i> | trat | ព្រែ | getreten | trittst, tritt | tritt | träte |
| Trinken d <i>rink</i> | trant | | getrunken | | | tränke |
| Trügen deceive | trog | | getrogen | | | tröge |
| Berderben spoil | verbarb When | 4 m | verdorben | verbirbît, verbirb ak and regular. | t verdir | b verdärbe 01 verdürbe |
| Berdrießen ver | verbroß | ω. | verdroffen | ak anu regular. | | verbröffe |
| Bergeffen forget | vergaß | | vergeffen | vergiffeft, vergißt | neraifi | |
| Berlieren lose | verlor | | verloren | perficient, perficie | i bergig | verlöre |
| Wachsen grow | wuchs | 10 | gewachsen | wächseft, wächft | | wüchse |
| Wägen weigh | woq | rlt | gewogen | iouujen, iouuje | | wöge |
| Waschen wash | wusch | | gewaschen | wäschest, wäscht | | wüsche |
| Beben weave | wob | | gewoben | toningelt, toningt | | möbe |
| Weichen yield | wich | iA | gewichen | | | |
| Weisen show | wies | · lt | gewiesen | | | |
| Wenden turn | wandte | | gewandt | | | wendete |
| Werben sue | warb | | geworben | wirbft, wirbt | mirh 1 | wärbe or würbe |
| Werden become | | ift | geworden | wirft, wird | | würde |
| | wurde | | 0 | | | |
| Werfen throw | warf | | geworfen | wirfft, wirft | wirf | wärfe or würfe |
| Biegen weigh | wog | | gewogen | | · | wöge |
| Winden wind | wand | | gewunden | | | wände |
| Wiffen know | wußte | | gewußt | weißt, we iß | | wüßte |
| Wollen will | wollte | | gewollt | willst, will | | • |
| Zeihen accuse | zieh | | geziehen | •• • | | |
| Ziehen draw | 30g | | gezogen | | | zöge |
| Zwingen force | zwang | | gezwungen | | | zwänge |
| | | | | | | |

. . •

VOCABULARIES

Numbers preceded by L. refer to Lessons. Numbers preceded by §. refer to paragraphs, or sections, of the Abstract of Grammar.

ber Mbend, bie Abende ovening; heute abend this evening; abends in the evening aber but, however; L. 19. 1. n.1; §. 188 all all, L. 13; §. 45. 138. 141; alle Lage every day allein alone; conj. but, only aller before superl. L. 15. 1. n.1; §. 146 alleriei all sorts of L. 10. II; §. 79. III allmächtig almighty ale when, as; after compar., than L. 6. 11. n.¹; §. 189 alfo hence, so, and so, accordingly §. 229 alt, älter, ältest- old; ber Alte the old man, bie Alte the old woman am — an bem at the; before superl. L. 15. I. n.²; §. 143 Amerifa, neut., America an, prep. dat. acc., at, on, near, to, up to auder other L. 12. 1; §. 45. 87. 141 aufangen, fing an, angefangen begin and = an bas at the, to the antworten, antwortete, geantwortet answer, reply ber Alpfel, bie Apfel apple ber April, gen. bes April(8), April arbeiten, arbeitete, gearbeitet work ärgern, ärgerte, geärgert vox arm, ärmer, ärmft- poor ber Mrm, bie Urme arm ber Mrme or bie Mrme the poor man or woman L. 15. II; §. 91 and also, too; aud nidt not either. neither auf, prep. dat. acc., on, upon, on top of; auf + acc. of time, as auf einige Bochen for some weeks; before superl. §. 145 aufhören, hörte auf, aufgehört stop, cease aufmachen, machte auf, aufgemacht, open

aufs - auf bas, §. 145

- anfftehen, stand auf, ift aufgestanden rise, get up
- aufwachen, wachte auf, ift aufgewacht wake up, awake
- bas Muge, bie Mugen eye L. 18. 11; §. 65
- aus, prep. dat., out of, from
- ausjehen, fab aus, ausgesehen look, appear

bald soon

- ber Bauer, bie Bauern peasant, farmer L. 18. 11; §. 65
- ber Baum, bie Bäume tree
- bei prep. dat., near(by), at, with; bei mir with me, at my house; bei Bater at Father's (house)
- beide both, two L. 12. 1; §. 45. 87. 141
- bas Bein, bie Beine log
- ber Berg, bie Berge mountain
- berühmt famous
- beschreiben, beschrieb, beschrieben describe beffer better, best
- befuchen, bejuchte, bejucht visit, call on
- bas Bett, bie Betten bed L. 18. II; §. 65
- bas Bild, bie Bilber picture
- bis until, till, up to; bis an ..., bis zu...up to, as far as
- bitte, without ich, please, pray
- bitten, bat, gebeten beg, ask; with um ask for
- bleiben, blieb, ift geblieben stay, remain
- bligen, bligte, gebligt, lighten, flash
- bie Blume, bie Blumen flower
- böje wicked, angry, vexed
- brechen, brach, gebrochen break
- brennen, brannte, gebrannt burn, be on fire L. 19, 11; §. 16
- ber Brief, bie Briefe letter [§. 16
- bringen, brachte, gebracht bring L. 19. 11

bas Brot, bie Brote bread ber Bruder, bie Brüber brother bas Buch, bie Bücher book ba then, there; conj. since, as L. 19. II. n.7; §. 191 [п; §. 194 **bafür** therefor, for it, for them L. 9. damit therewith, with it, for them L. 9. 11; §. 195 dauten, bantte, gebantt thank baun then, thereupon baran thereat, at it, at them, of it L. 9. п; §. 196 barauf thereupon, on it, on them L. 9. 11; §. 197 **barin** therein, in it, in them L. 9. π barüber thereover, over it, over them, on account of it barum therefore, for that reason bak, conj., that, so that; § 198 bavon thereof, of it, of them L. 9. n bein, beiner etc. your, yours L. 6. 11, 10. п, 12. п; §. 50. 87. 121 ber beinige yours L. 13; §. 90, 121 beuten, bachte, gebacht think L. 19. 11; §. 16 benn then, please, pray; for; §. 200. 228 ber, art., the; L. 4. 1; pron., L. 9. 1; §. 42. 122. 125 ff. berjenige that, he L. 13; §. 90 berfelbe the same L. 13; §. 90 beshalb therefore, on that account beutich German; ber Deutsche L. 15. 11; §. 91 ber Diener, bie Diener servant biefer this L. J. 1; §. 47 body but, yet, still, nevertheless; §. 202 ber Dottor, bie Dottoren doctor L. 18. п; §. 65 bonnern, bonnerte, gebonnert thunder bas Dorf, bie Dörfer village bort there, yonder brei three, britt- third bu thou, you L. 1. 1; §. 38. 120 buntel dark büuten, es büntt mich methinks L. 28 burd, prep. acc., through, by bürfen, burfte, geburft be allowed, may L. 22; §. 25 ff. 180 burften or bürften, es burftet or bürftet mich I am thirsty L. 28

eben just, just now edel noble ehe, conj., before ein, einer etc., a, an, one L. 6. 1., 12. 11; §. 50 ff. 87 einander one another, each other §. 40 einige some L. 13; §. 45. 90 einmal once (upon a time), es war ein= mal once upon a time there was §. 203 eine one L. 16; §. 99 bie Eltern, plur. only, parents empfangen, empfing, empfangen roceive bas Ende, bie Enben end L. 18. II; §. 65 eudlich finally bie Grbe, bie Erben earth erlanben, erlaubte, erlaubt allow, permit erft first L. 16; §. 100. 204. erzählen, erzählte, erzählt toll, narrato es it L. 19. I. n.8 ; §. 119 ber Giel, bie Gjel donkey effen, aß, gegeffen eat etwas something, some L. 10. II; §. 137 ener, eurer etc., your, yours L. 6. II, 10. п, 12. п; §. 50. 87. 121 ber enrige yours L. 13; §. 90. 121 fahren, fuhr, ift gefahren drive, go ber Hall, bie galle fall, case fallen, fiel, ift gefallen fall fangen, fing, gefangen catch, capture faul lazy bie Reber, bie gebern feather, pen ber Feind, bie Feinbe enemy bas Feld, bie Felber field bas geufter, bie genfter window feft fast, firm bas Feuer, bie Feuer fire finden, fanb, gejunden find ficific diligent, industrious ber Fluft, bie fluffe river folgen, folgte, ift gejolgt, dat., follow fortfahren, fuhr fort, fortgefahren continue fragen, fragte, gefragt ask, inquire bie Frau, bie Frauen woman, wife, Mrs. bas Fränlein, bie Fräulein young lady, Miss bie Frende bie Freuben joy freuen (fich), freute, gefreut rojoico ber Freund, bie Freunde friend

VOCABULARY

bie Freundin, bie Freundinnen friend früh early führen führte, geführt lead, escort für, prep. acc., for ber guß, bie Füße foot; zu Fuß on foot gang whole, entire, quite gar very, gar nicht not at all, gar nichts nothing at all, gar fein none at all geben, gab, gegeben give gefallen, gefiel, gefallen please, suit gegen, prep. acc., against, towards geben, ging, ift gegangen go, walk gehören, gehörte, gehört, dat., belong bas Geld, bie Gelber money genug enough acrade just, exactly gern gladly §. 206 geicheben, geschah, ift geschehen happen bie Gefcicite, bie Geschichten history, story geftern yesterday gewift certain, sure gib, imperat., give L. 21. 11; §. 20; gibit, gibt, 2. 3. sing. pres. ind. of geben L. 20. 11; §. 18, 3; es gibt + acc. there is, there are bas Glas, bie Gläfer glass glauben, glaubte, geglaubt believe, think glüdlich happy, fortunate ber Gott, bie Götter god ber Graf, bie Grafen count groß, größer, größt- great, tall, large, big L. 15. 1; §. 96 grün green aut, beffer, beft- good, adv., well L. 15. 1; §. 96 haben, hatte, gehabt have halten, hielt, gehalten hold, keep; with für regard as bie Sand, bie Banbe hand bas Bans, bie Säufer house, ju haufe at home, nach hause home heif hot heißen, hieß, geheißen be called or named, ich heiße Rarl my name is Charles helfen, half, geholfen, dat., help §. 27. 5 ber along this way, hither §. 34; L. 25 herans out this way, out from there ber Berr, bie herren, gentleman, Mr., master, lord L. 8. 1; §. 63

berunterfallen, fiel berunter, ift beruntergefallen fall down heruntertommen, fam herunter, ift heruns tergekommen come down bas fers, bie herzen heart L. 18. 11; §. 65 heute to-day, heute morgen this morning bier here ber Simmel, bie himmel heaven, sky hin along that way, thither §. 34; L. 25 binaufgeben, ging binauf, ift binaufgegan= gen go up thither hinane out that way, out from here binter, prep. dat. acc., behind, beyond binterlaffen, hinterließ, hinterlaffen let : !! behind, bequeath hoch, höher, höchit high, tall L. 15. 1; §. 96 hoffen, hoffte, gehofft hope bas **Holz**, bie Hölzer wood hören, hörte, gehört hear, listen §. 27. 5 ber Sund, bie hunbe dog ber Sut, bie Sute hat ihr ye, you; ihr, ihrer etc. her, hers, their etc. L. 6. II, 10. II, 12. II; §. 50. 87.121 ber ihrige hers L. 13 ; §. 90. 121 im = in bem in the immer always, all the time in, prep. dat. acc., in, into; ins = in bas into the ift, ift from effen L. 20. 11, 21. 11; §. 18. 20 ja yes §. 208 bas Jahr, bie Jahre year je ever §. 209 jeber every, each L. 5. 1, 12. 1; §. 45. 87 jedermann everybody §. 44 jemand somebody §. 44 jener that, yon L. 5. 1; §. 45 jest now, at present jung, jünger, jüngst- young ber Raifer, bie Raifer omperor

fait, tälter, tälteft- cold fanfen, faufte, gefauft buy fanm hardly, scarcely fein no L. 6. 11; §. 50; L. 13; §. 90 fennen, fannte, gefannt know L. 19. 11; §. 16. 186 bas Rind, bie Rinder child bie Rirche, bie Rirchen church bas Rleid, bie Rleiber dress flein small, little; bie Rleinen the little 01109 flug, flüger, flügit- prudent, wise, clever ber Rnabe, bie Rnaben boy tommen, tam, ift getommen come ber Rönig, bie Rönige king bie Rönigin, bie Röniginnen queen bie Rönigstochter, bie Rönigstöchter prin-C688 tonnen, fonnte, getonnt can, be able L. 22; §. 25 ff. 181. 186 frant, fränker, fränkit- ill, sick ber Rrieg, bie Rriege war fura, fürzer, fürzest- short bas Sand, bie Länber land, country, auf bem Lanbe in the country lang, länger, längit- long lange, adv., a long time laffen, ließ, gelaffen let, cause to §. 27. 5 lanfen, lief, ift gelaufen run leben, lebte, gelebt live legen, legte, gelegt lay, put lehren, lehrte, gelehrt toach ber Lehrer, bie Lehrer teacher leicht light, easy leid, es tut mir leib, bag I am sorry that Iernen, lernte, gelernt learn lefen, las, gelejen read lest- last bie Seute, plur. only, people lieb dear, compar. lieber rather, superl. am liebsten best of all §. 206 lieben, liebte, geliebt love liegen, lag, gelegen lie, be situated loben, lobte, gelobt praise machen, machte, gemacht make, do mächtig powerful, mighty bas Mädchen, bie Mäbchen girl man one, they, people §. 136 maucher many (a) L. 5. 1; §. 45. 81. 90 ber Mann, bie Männer man mehr more, nicht mehr no more, no longer L. 15. 1; §. 96 mehrere soveral L. 13; §. 45. 90 mein my, meiner etc. mine L. 6. n, 10. п, 12. п; §. 50. 87. 121 meinen, meinte, gemeint mean, think

ber meinige mine L. 13; §. 90. 121 meift- most L. 15. 1; §. 96 ber Menich, bie Menichen man, human being mit, prep. dat., with, along with mögen, mochte, gemocht may, care to, like to L. 22; §. 25 ff. 182 möglich possible ber Monat, bie Monate month ber Moutag, bie Montage Monday ber Morgen, bie Morgen morning, heute morgen this morning morgen, adv., to-morrow müffen, mußte, gemußt must, be obliged to, have to L. 22; §. 25 ff. 183 bie Mutter, bie Mütter mother nam, prep. dat., after, to, toward ber Rachbar, bie Rachbarn neighbor L. 18. 11; §. 65 nachdem, conj., after bie Macht, bie Rächte night nah, näher, nächit- near L. 15. 1; §. 96 neben, prep. dat. acc., near, next to nehmen, nahm, genommen tako neunen, nannte, genannt name, call nen new neulich recently, lately nichts nothing nie never niemand nobody §. 44 noch yet, still, noch nicht not yet nun now §. 212 nur only, but ob if, whether oben above, up-stairs øder or ohne, prep. acc., without bas Ohr, bie Ohren ear L. 18. 11; §. 65 ber Ontel, bie Ontel uncle

bas **Papier**, die Papiere paper **Paris'**, pronounce parees', Paris bas **Pferd**, die Pferde horse ber **Pring**, die Pringen prince ber **Professor** L. 18. 11; §. 65

raten, riet, geraten advise, guess recht right, r. haben be in the right reben, rebete, gerebet talk regnen, regnete, geregnet rain reich rich reifen, reifte, ift gereift travel reiten, ritt, ift geritten ride rennen, rannte, ift gerannt run ber Rod, bie Rode coat rufen, rief, gerufen call fagen, fagte, gejagt say, tell foiden, foidte, gefdidt send bas Schiff, bie Schiffe ship fclafen, ichlief, geichlafen sleep folagen, jolug, gejolagen strike, defeat foilent bad, poor, mean bas Goloff, bie Schlöffer castle, palace ber Echneiber, bie Schneiber tailor foneien, ichneite, geschneit snow fonell quick, swift foon already §. 214 fmön beautiful, handsome. fine idreiben, idrieb, geschrieben write, with an and acc. write to bie Goule, bie Schulen school ber Coüler, bie Schüler scholar, pupil fowach, ichmächer, ichmächit- weak fcmars, ichwärzer, ichwärzest- black fower heavy, difficult bie Cowefter, bie Schweftern sister feche six feben, fab, gesehen soo, look §. 27. 5 febr very fein, war, ift gewesen bo fein, jeiner etc. his L. 6. 11, 10. 11, 12. 11; §. 50. 87. 121 ber feinige his L. 13; § 90. 121 feit prep. dat., since; conj. since, as bie Geite, bie Seiten side, page felber, felbit, intensive, self, himself etc. L. 8. 1; §. 41 fenden, fanbte, gefanbt send fegen, feste, gefest set, place; refl. sit down, be seated fich, refl., self, himself etc. L. 7. 11; §. 39 ficher, safe, secure fie she, they, Sie you L. 1. 1 fingen, fang, gefungen sing fisen, jag, gefeffen sit fo so, thus, jo . . . wie as . . . as §. 215 ber Cohn, bie Sohne son folance as long as

folcher such L. 5. 1, 10. 11. 12. 1; §. 45. 79.87 ber Goldat, bie Golbaten soldier follen, jollte, gejolt shall, am to L. 22; §. 25 ff. 184 ber Commer, bie Sommer summer fondern but, on the contrary §. 188 ber Conntag, bie Sonntage Sunday fonft else, otherwise fbåt late fpielen, fpielte, gespielt play fprechen, iprach, geiprochen speak ber Staat, bie Staaten state L. 18. II; §. 65 bie Stabt, bie Stäbte city, town ftart, ftärter, ftärtit- strong fteben, ftanb, gestanben stand ftehlen, ftahl, gestohlen steal ber Stein, bie Steine stone ftellen, ftellte, gestellt place, put fterben, ftarb, ift gestorben die ftill still, quiet bie Strake, bie Straken street bas Stück, bie Stücke piece ber Stuhl, bie Stühle chair bie Stunde, bie Stunden hour fuchen, juchte, gejucht sook, look for ber Tag, bie Tage day tat see tun bas Tier, bie Tiere animal, beast ber Tifch, bie Tijche table

bie Sochter, bie Löchter daughter tot dead

tragen, trug, getragen carry, wear treffen, traf, getroffen hit, meet treten, trat, ift getreten tread, step trinten, trant, getrunten drink tun, tat, getan do bie Zür, bie Lüren door

über, prep. dat. acc., over, above überfallen, überfiel, überfallen surprise überfehen, jehte über, übergejeht forry across überfehen, überfehte, überjeht translate überzengen, überzeugte, überzeugt convinco bie Uhr, bie Uhren clock, watch, eš ijt jehö Uhr it is six o'clock um, prep. acc., about, around, um jehö Uhr at six o'clock, bitten um ask for umbringen, bradite um, umgebracht kill

VOCABULARY

nub and L. 3. 1; §. 232 unfer our, unferer etc. ours L. 6. 11, 10. 11, 12. 11; §. 50. 87. 121 ber unfrige, ours L. 13; §. 90. 121 unten below, down-stairs unter, prep. dat. acc., under, beneath unterbrechen, unterbrach, unterbrochen interrupt untergeben, ging unter, ift untergegangen go under untergehen, unterging, untergangen undergo unternehmen, unternahm, unternommen undertake ber Bater, bie Bäter father verbienen, verbiente, verbient oarn, deserve vergeffen, vergaß, vergeffen forget vertaufen, vertaufte, vertauft soll verlieren, verlor, verloren loso berfprecher, versprach, versprochen promise berfteben, verstanb, verstanben understand berfuchen, berjuchte, verjucht try biel much, many L. 10. 11, 12. 1; §. 45. 87. 96. 139 bielerlei many kinds of bielleicht perhaps bier four, viert- fourth ber Bogel, bie Bögel bird boll full, complete vollbringen, vollbrachte, vollbracht complete, carry out vollenden, vollendete, vollendet complete vom = von bem of the, from the **von**, prep. dat., of, from; pass., by **vor**, prep. dat. acc., before, in front of; vor einem Jahre a year ago ber Bagen, bie Dagen wagon, carriage wahr true, nicht wahr? (isn't it true? i.e.) isn't it so? don't you? etc. während, prep. gen., during; conj., while ber Wald, bie Bälber woods, forest wann when, at what time? warm, wärmer, wärmit- warm warten, wartete, gewartet wait warum why, what for was what, that which, whatever L. 9. 1; §. 43, 129, 141

bas Baffer, bie Baffer water ber Weg, bie Bege way, road weg away, off weil because ber Wein, bie Beine wine weife wise weiß white weiß 1. sing. pres. ind. of wiffen weit, wide, far away, far; weiter farther, further welcher L. 5. 1, 10. 11; §. 45. 79. 90 bie Welt, bie Belten world wenden, wandte, gewandt turn, fich wens ben with an and acc. apply to wenig little, few L. 10. n. 12. 1; 14. §. 45. 87. 139 wenn if, whenever §. 189 wer who, whoever L. 9. 1; §. 43. 129 werben, murbe or warb, ift geworben become, get, grow werfen, warf, geworfen throw wider, pref., against L. 26; §. 37 wie how, jo . . . wie as . . . as §. 217 wieder again wiederbringen, brachte wieber, wieberge= bracht bring again, return wiederholen, holte wieber, wiebergeholt fetch again, fetch back wiederholen, wiederholte, wiederholt ropeat wiedertommen, tam wieber, ift wieberge= tommen come again, return wiederfeben, jab wieber, wiebergejeben soo or meet again ber Winter, bie Binter winter wirflic real(ly) wiffen, wußte, gewußt know L. 23; §. 28. 186 mø where bie Boche, bie 2Bochen week wofür wherefor, for what, for which woher whence, wherefrom wohin whither, whereto wohl well, indeed §. 218 wohnen, wohnte, gewohnt reside, live wollen, wollte, gewollt will, be willing, intend to, be about to L. 22; §. 25 ff. 185 womit wherewith, with what or which woran whereat, at which or what worauf whereupon, upon which or what

204

bas Wort, die Borte word wovon whereof, wherefrom, of or from which or what [that wundert, es wundert mich, daß I wonder wünschen, wünscht, gewünscht wish

zehn ten

zeigen, zeigte, gezeigt show, point out bie Beit, bie Zeiten time ziehen, zog, gezogen draw, pull ziehen, zog, ift gezogen march, go, move bas Rimmer, bie Zimmer room 3n, prep. dat., to, toward, zu haufe at home, zu Fuß on foot, zu Bjerbe on horseback

zu, adv., too

sum = ju bem to the; sur = ju ber to the suriat back

aufammen together

awanaig twenty

awar to be sure, it is true §. 219

swei two, zweit- second

swiften, prep. dat. acc., between swölf twelve

a, an, indef. art., L. 6. 1 able, be a. fönnen L. 22 about, round a. um acc.; be about to wollen L. 22; §. 185 shove über dat. acc.; a. - up-stairs oben across über dat. acc. advise raten, riet, geraten after nach dat. acc.; conj. nachbem again wieber against gegen acc. ago bor dat. all all L. 13; a. = entirely ganz; none at all gar fein-; not at a. gar nicht; nothing at a. gar nichts; of all with superl. aller L. 15. n. 1 allow erlauben, erlaubte, erlaubt; be allowed to bürfen L. 22; §. 25 ff. 180 almighty allmächtig alone allein already icon always immer am to jollen L. 22; §. 25. 184 America Amerifa among unter dat. acc. and und L. 3. 1; §. 232 angry böje animal bas Tier, bie Tiere answer antworten, antwortete, geantwortet anything, not a. nichts; in questions, as did he give her a.? etwas L. 8. II; §. 137 apple ber Apfel, bie Apfel apply to fich wenden an + acc. April ber April L. 14. n. 2

arm ber Arm, bie Arme

around um acc.

- as = when ald; = since ba; as . . . as fo . . . wie
- ask = inquire fragen, fragte, gefragt; = beg bitten, bat, gebeten, a. for bitten um acc.
- at an dat. acc.; at which woran; at it or them baran; at the house of bei dat.; at five o'clock um fünf Uhr

bad = poor, mean ichlecht; = wicked böje

- be jein, war, ift gewesen
- beautiful icon L. 4. 1. n.1
- because weil subord. conj.
- become werben, wurbe or warb, ift gewors ben
- bed bas Bett, bie Betten L. 18. 11
- before vor dat. acc.; conj. ehe

begin anfangen, fing an, angefangen

behind hinter dat. acc.

believe glauben, glaubte, geglaubt

below unten adv.; unter dat. acc.

beneath unter dat. acc.

beside neben dat. acc.

best best- L. 15 and note 2; L. 23

between zwischen dat. acc.

bird ber Bogel, bie Bögel

black ichwarz, ichwärzer, ichwärzest-

book bas Buch, bie Bücher

both beib- L. 12. I

boy ber Rnabe, bie Rnaben

bread bas Brot, bie Brote

break brechen, brach, gebrochen

bring bringen, brachte, gebracht brother ber Bruber, bie Brüber burn brennen, brannte, gebrannt L. 19. II: §. 16 but aber, jonbern L. 19. 1. n.1; §. 188; - only nur; - yet body buy taufen, taufte, getauft by, with passive, von dat. call = c. out, shout rufen, rief, gerufen; = name nennen, nannte, genannt L. 19. II; c. on bejuchen, bejuchte, bejucht can tonnen, tonnte, getonnt, L. 22; § 25. 181.186 care to mögen, mochte, gemocht L. 22; §. 25. 182 carriage ber Bagen, bie Bagen carry tragen, trug, getragen; c. out bolls bringen, vollbrachte, vollbracht case ber fall, bie fälle castle bas Schloß, bie Schlöffer oatch fangen, fing, gefangen certain(ly) gewiß chair ber Stuhl, bie Stühle change (money) fleines Gelb L. 10. II. n. 1 Charles Rarl, gen. Rarls child bas Rinb, bie Rinber church bie Rirche, bie Rirchen city bie Stabt, bie Stäbte clever flug, flüger, flügitclock bie Uhr, bie Uhren; at 5 o'clock um fünf Ubr close by neben dat. acc. coat ber Rod, bie Röde cold falt, fälter, fälteftcome tommen, tam, ift getommen; c. down heruntertommen, tam herunter, ift heruns tergetommen count ber Graf, bie Grafen country bas Lanb, bie Länber; in the c. auf bem Lanbe cry out = shout rufen, rief, gerufen dark buntel daughter bie Lochter, bie Löchter day ber Tag, bie Tage dead tot dear lieb describe bejdreiben, bejdrieb, bejdrieben die fterben, ftarb, ift gestorben diligent fleißig

do tun, tat, getan; do, did etc. in guestions and negations not transl. L. 1. 1; §. 150; do = make machen, machte, ge= macht; it won't do es geht nicht L. 10. 11. doctor ber Dottor, bie Dottoren L. 18. 11. dog ber hund, bie hunde donkey ber Gjel, bie Gjel door bie Tür, bie Türen down-stairs unten dress bas Rleib, bie Rleiber drink trinten, trant, getrunten drive fahren, fuhr, ift gefahren during während gen. each (one) jeber L. 5. 1; 12. 1; §. 45. 87; e. other einanber indecl. car bas Ohr, bie Ohren L. 18. 11 early früh earn verbienen, verbiente, verbient earth bie Erbe, bie Erben easy leigt eat effen, aß, gegeffen else fonft emperor ber Raifer, bie Raifer end bas Enbe, bie Enben L. 18. II; §. 65 enemy ber Feinb, bie Feinbe enough genug evening ber Abend, bie Abende every (one) jeber L. 5. 1, 12. 1; §. 45. 87; everybody jeber or jebermann; everything alles eve bas Auge, bie Augen L. 18. II fall fallen, fiel, ift gefallen ; f. down herun= terfallen, fiel herunter, ift heruntergefallen famous berühmt farmer ber Bauer, bie Bauern L. 18. 11; §. 65 fast jonell father ber Bater, bie Bäter feeble ichwach, ichwächer, ichwächstferry across überjegen, jeste über, überge= **ie**bt few wenige L. 10. 11, 12. 1, 14; §. 87. 139 field bas Felb, bie Felber finally enblich find finden, fanb, gefunden fine icon fire bas feuer, bie feuer; bo on f. brennen, brannte, gebrannt L. 19. II; §. 16 first erft five fünf

flower bie Blume, bie Blumen follow folgen, folgte, ift gefolgt foot ber Fuß, bie Füße; on 1. ju fuß for für acc.; benn conj.; ask for bitten um with acc. forest ber Balb, bie Bälber forget vergessen, vergaß, vergesjen former(ly) früher, compar. of früh four vier friend ber Freund, bie Freunde from, away f. bon dat. ; out f. aus dat. front. in f. of bor dat. acc. garden ber Garten, bie Gärten gentleman ber herr, bie herren L. 8. I Gorman beutich adj.; ber Deutsche, bie Deutschen subst. L. 15. 11; § 91 - get = become, grow werben, wurde or warb, ift geworben; g. up aufstehen, ftanb auf, ift aufgestanben girl bas Mäbchen, bie Mäbchen give geben, gab, gegeben glad, be g. fich freuen über acc. L. 28. 1; gladly gem §. 206 glass bas Glas, bie Glafer go gehen, ging, ift gegangen ; - travel reis fen, reifte, ift gereist or fahren, fuhr, ift gefahren; g. on, continue fortfahren, fuhr fort, fortgefahren ; g. up hinaufgehen, ging binauf, ift hinaufgegangen; am going to, use the present tense L. 2. 1. 5. 6 god ber Gott, bie Götter good gut, beffer, beft- L. 15. 1; §. 96 great groß, größer, größt- L. 15. 1; §. 96 green grün grow = get or become werben, wurbe or ward, ift geworben hand bie Band, bie Banbe handsome joon happen geschen, geschab, ift gescheben happy glüdlich hardly faum hat ber But, bie Bute have haben, hatte, gehabt he er; emphatic ber demonstr. L. 9. 1, before a relat. berjenige L. 13 hear hören, hörte, gehört heart bas perz, bie perzen L. 18. II heavy ichwer Henry Heinrich

holp belfen, balf, geholfen hence - therefore also her adj. ihr L. 6. 11, 10. 11 here hier hers ihr L. 12. II: ber ihrige L. 13 herself (ich L. 7. 11, 28 high hoch, höher, höchit L. 12. 11, 15 himself fich L. 7. 11, 28; emphatic felbit, felber L. 8. 1 his fein L. 6. 11, 12. 11, ber feinige L. 13 history bie Geschichte, bie Geschichten hit treffen, traf, getroffen hold halten, hielt, gehalten home nach hause, at h. zu hause hope hoffen, hoffte, gehofft horse bas Pferb, bie Pferbe; on horseback au Pferbe hot heiß hour bie Stunde, bie Stunden house bas haus, bie baujer; at the h. of bei with dat. of person how wie hungry, I am h. es hungert mich L. 28 if wenn, ob ill trant, fränter, fräntstin in dat. acc.; in it barin, in which morin industrious fleißig intend to wollen L. 22 interrupt unterbrechen, unterbrach, unterbrochen into in acc. its fein L. 6. 11, 12. 11, 13 joy bie Freude, bie Freuden just, just now eben; just - exactly gerabe kind, all kinds of allerlei; many kinds of vielerlei L. 10. II king ber Rönig, bie Rönige know personally tennen, tannte, getannt L. 19. II; know facts wiffen, wußte, gewußt L. 23, see also §. 28. 186 lady, young 1. bas Fräulein, bie Fräulein land bas Lanb, bie Länber large groß, größer, größt- L. 15. I; §. 96 last lett-, at 1. enblich lato ipät lay legen, legte, gelegt

lary faul lead führen, führte, geführt learn lernen, lernte, gelernt leave behind, bequeath hinterlaffen, hin= terließ, binterlassen leg bas Bein, bie Beine lot laffen, ließ, gelaffen L. 20. 1. n.1; §. 164 letter ber Brief, bie Briefe lie, lay, lain liegen, lag, gelegen light leicht lighton bligen, bligte, gebligt like, I like to ich mag gern L. 22; §. 182, see also §. 206 little flein, wenig L. 10. 11, 12. 1, 14; a l. ein wenig or etwas live leben, lebte, gelebt; = dwell wohnen, wohnte, gewohnt long, adj., lang, länger, längit-; adv. lange; no longer nicht mehr look jehen, jab, gejehen; = seem, appear aussehen, jab aus, ausgesehen; 1. for ju= chen, juchte, gejucht lord ber herr, bie herren lose verlieren, verlor, verloren love lieben, liebte, geliebt make machen, machte, gemacht man ber Mann, bie Männer; - human being ber Menich, bie Menichen many viele L. 12. 1, 14; many a (one) mancher L. 5. 1, 10. 11 Mary Maria master ber herr, bie herren L. 8. 1 may mögen L. 22; §. 25. 182; may I ...? barf ich . . . ? moan meinen, meinte, gemeint moot treffen, traf, getroffen mine mein etc. L. 12. 11; §. 50. 87. 121 Miss Fräulein Monday ber Montag, bie Montage money bas Gelb, bie Gelber month ber Monat, bie Monate more mehr morning ber Morgen, bie Morgen mother bie Mutter, bie Mütter mountain ber Berg, bie Berge Mr. herr Mrs. Frau must muffen L. 22; must not nicht bur= fen my mein L. 6. 11, 10. 11

name nennen, nannte, genannt; his n. is er heißt, what is his n.? wie heißt er? near nah, näher, nächft L. 15 neighbor ber Nachbar, bie Nachbarn L. 18. 11 never nie new neu next nachit- L. 15. 1; §. 96 night bie Racht, bie Rächte Imebr no nein; adj. tein L. 5. 1; no longer nicht noble ebel nobody niemanb, feiner L. 13; §. 90 none feiner L. 13; §. 90 not nicht, not yet noch nicht nothing nichts now jest, nun obliged, be o. to muffen L. 22 often oft old alt, älter, ältefton auf, an dat. acc., on Monday am Mon= tag L. 9. 1, on foot zu Fuß, on horseback ju Pferbe, on it baran, barauf, on top of auf dat. acc. once einmal, einst, once upon a time there was es war einmal L. 12. II one indef. man; one num. ein, einer etc. L. 6. 1, 12. 11; a good one, good ones etc. L. 10. I. n.¹ only nur open aufmachen, machte auf, aufgemacht or ober other anber L. 12. 1, 14, each o., one another einander, indecl. our unfer L. 6. 11; ours L. 12. 11, 13 out of aus dat. over über dat. acc. palace bas Schloß, bie Schlöffer paper bas Bapier, bie Papiere parents bie Eltern plur. only peasant ber Bauer, bie Bauern L. 18. II pon bie Feber, bie Febern people = persons in general bie Leute plur., or man (one) perhaps vielleicht permit erlauben, erlaubte, erlaubt picture bas Bilb, bie Bilber piece bas Stud, bie Stude play ipielen, ipielte, gespielt please = pray bitte, = suit gefallen, ge fiel, gefallen

.

pleasure, with p. gern poor arm, ärmer, ärmft-; the p. man ber Arme, the p. woman bie Arme, the p. people bie Armen; p. = mean, bad jáj leáj t possible möglich praise loben, lobte, gelobt prefer, I prefer to ride ich reite lieber L. 23; §. 206 promise versprechen, versprach, versprochen queen bie Rönigin, bie Röniginnen quick ichnell quiet still quite ganz rain regnen, regnete, geregnet rather lieber L. 23; §. 206 read lejen, las, gelejen reason, for that r. beshalb, barum receive empfangen, empfing, empfangen recently neulid reioice fich freuen L. 28 remain bleiben, blieb, ift geblieben repeat wieberholen, wieberholte, wieberholt rich reich ride in a carriage fahren, fuhr, ift gefahren, on horseback reiten, ritt, ift geritten right recht, be in the r. recht haben river ber Hluß, bie Hluffe road ber Beg, bie Bege room bas Zimmer, bie Zimmer • run laufen, lief, ift gelaufen, rennen, rannte, ift gerannt L. 19. 11 same berjelbe L. 13; §. 90 say jagen, jagte, gejagt scarcely faum school bie Schule, bie Schulen, go to s. jur Schule geben seat one's self fich fegen, feste, gefest soo jeben, jab, gejeben sell vertaufen, vertaufte, vertauft sond ichiden, ichidte, geichidt, fenben, fonbte, gejandt L. 20. II servant ber Diener, bie Diener sot fegen, feste, gefest seventy-five fünfunbfiebzig several mehrere L. 13. 14 shall jollen L. 22 ship bas Schiff, bie Schiffe

l

short furz, fürzer, fürzeitshow zeigen, zeigte, gezeigt, s. the way, escort führen, führte, geführt sick frant, fränter, fräntitside bie Seite, bie Seiten since prep. feit dat.; conj. ba sing fingen, fang, gefungen sister bie Schwefter, bie Schweftern sit figen, jag, gejeffen six jechs sloop ichlafen, ichlief, geichlafen small flein Smith Schmibt snow foneien, foneite, geschneit so jo, so . . . as, jo . . . wie, s. = and so, hence aljo soldier ber Solbat, bie Solbaten some = a little etwas, = a few einige L. 13.14 somebody jemanb something etwas son ber Sohn, bie Söhne soon balb sorry, I am s. that es tut mir leib, bag speak iprechen, iprach, geiprochen stand fteben, ftanb, gestanben state ber Staat, bie Staaten L. 18. 11 stay bleiben, blieb, ift geblieben stop treten, trat, ift getreten still = as yet noch, = yet, but boch, = quiet still stop == cease aufhören, hörte auf, aufgehört story bie Beidicte, bie Beidicten street bie Straße, bie Straßen strike ichlagen, ichlug, geichlagen strong ftart, ftärter, ftärtitstudent ber Schüler, bie Schüler study lernen, lernte, gelernt such folder L. 5. 1, 10. 11, 12. 1; §. 45. 79.87 summer ber Sommer, bie Sommer Sunday ber Sonntag, bie Sonntage sure gewiß, to be s. zwar table ber Tijd, bie Tijde tailor ber Schneiber, bie Schneiber take nehmen, nahm, genommen, t. to be halten für acc. talk reben, rebete, gerebet tall groß, größer, größt-, = high boch, höher, höchst- L. 12. 11

teach lehren, lehrte, gelehrt teacher ber Lehrer, bie Lehrer tell = say fagen, fagte, gejagt, = narrate erzählen, erzählte, erzählt than als thank banten, bantte, gebantt, th. you banke that demonst. ber L. 9. 1, jener L. 5. 1, berjenige L. 13; relat. ber, welcher L. 9. 1, that which was L. 9. 1; conj. bag their ihr L. 6. 11, theirs L. 12. 11, 13 themselves ich L. 7. II then bann, ba there ba, bort; there was or were once es war or waren einmal L. 12. 11; there is or there are es gibt with acc. therefore aljo, beshalb thereupon barauf L. 9. 11; §. 197 they fie, man think benten, bachte, gebacht; glauben, glaubte, geglaubt thirsty, I am th. es burftet or burftet mich this (one) biejer L. 5. 1; this evening heute abend three brei through burd acc. thunder bonnern, bonnerte, gebonnert till bis time bie Beit, bie Beiten; at what t.? wann? from t. to t. von Zeit zu Zeit to zu dat., an dat. acc. to-day heute together zujammen to-morrow morgen too = also auch, = too much zutowards nach dat. town bie Stabt, bie Stäbte translate überfegen, überfeste, überfest travel reifen, reifte, ift gereift tree ber Baum, bie Bäume true wahr try versuchen, versuchte, versucht two zwei, = both beibe L. 12. 1 uncle ber Ontel, bie Ontel understand verstehen, verstanb, verstanben undertake unternehmen, unternahm, unternommen up to bis an acc. upon auf dat. acc. up-stairs oben

very fehr vexed, be v. at fich ärgern über acc. village bas Dorf, bie Dörfer wait warten, wartete, gewartet wake up aufwachen, machte auf, ift aufgewact walk geben, ging, ift gegangen war ber Rrieg, bie Rriege warm warm, wärmer, wärmftwater bas Baffer, bie Baffer way ber 2Beg, bie 2Bege weak ichmach, ichmächer, ichmächftwear tragen, trug, getragen week bie Boche, bie Bochen well adv. gut, adj. adv. wohl what was L. 9. 1, what a weld L. 10. 11 when als, = whenever wenn L.7. I. n.1; §. 189; interrog. wann whenever wenn §. 189 where wo, w. from woher whether ob which welcher L. 5. 11, ber L. 9. 1 while während white weiß who welcher L. 5. 11, ber L. 9. 1, interrog. wer L. 9. 1 whole ganz why warum wife bie Frau, bie Frauen will wollen L. 22; §. 25. 185 willingly gern window bas Fenster, bie Fenster wine ber Bein, bie Beine winter ber Winter, bie Winter wise weije, flug, flüger, flügftwish munichen with mit dat., with it bamit; - at the house of bei dat. without ohne acc. woman bie Frau, bie Frauen wonder, I wonder that es wundert mich, baß wood bas Holz, bie Hölzer woods - forest ber Balb, bie Bälber word bas Wort, bie Borte work arbeiten, arbeitete, gearbeitet write ichreiben, ichrieb, geichrieben year bas Jahr, bie Jahre

yesterday gestern

yet = but boğ, = still, as yet noğ, not yet noğ niğt yonder bort you bu, ihr, Sie L. 1. 1 young jung, jünger, jüngft-, y. lady bas Fräulein, bie Fräulein your bein, euer, Jhr L. 6. 11 yours L. 12. 11, 13 yourself fic L. 7. 11, felbft L. 8. 1.; § 41

· · · · · . .

INDEX

The Index refers to subjects only. For references to the treatment of individual words, as jeder, lennen, what etc., consult the Vocabularies.

absolute acc. §. 115; absol. compar. §. 142 accent p. 6; a. on compd. verbs L. 24. 25; §. 32. 35 accusative §. 114 ff. active infin. with pass. meaning L. 20. 1. n.¹; §. 164 ff. address L. 1. 1; §. 120 adjectives L. 10. 11; §. 71 ff.; as adverb L. 4. 1. n. 1; §. 71. 3; comparison L. 15. 1; §. 94 ff.; as substantives L. 15. 11; §. 91; after pers. pron. §. 85; with gen. §. 110; with dat. §. 112 adverbs L. 4. 1. n. 1; §. 71. 3; 188 ff.; a. of negation §. 247 appositive §. 105 articles L. 4, 5, 6; §. 45. 50. 103 ff. auxiliaries of mood L. 22; §. 25 ff.; a. of tense §. 5 ff.; 187 capital letters p. 2 cases L. 4. 11; §. 54. 108 ff. comparison, see adjectives compound nouns §. 53; c. verbs L. 24-26; §. 31. ff. concessive clauses §. 159. 244 conditional modes and clauses L. 29; §. 157 ff. conjunctions §. 228 ff. countries, names of §. 69. 107 dative §. 111 ff. day, hours of §. 147; days of the month §. 70. 103. 148 defective strong inflection L. 6; §. 50 ff. definite article, see articles demonstratives §. 122 ff. dependent clauses §. 231. 240 diminutives L. 4. 11; §. 56 do, did, not translated L. 1. 1. n. 2; §. 150 exclamations §. 243

future tense §. 154 gender L. 4. 1; §. 117; rules of gender L. 4-8; §. 53, 56, 1. 59, 1 and 3. 61, 1. 63, 1. genitive §. 109 ff. hours of the day, see day imperative L. 21; §. 20. 170 imperfect, see past impersonal verbs L. 28; §. 30 indeclinable adjectives §. 71 ff. indicative, tenses of L. 29; §. 151 ff. indirect statement L. 30; §. 161 infinitive L. 20. 1. n. 1; §. 164 ff. inseparable prefixes L. 24; §. 32 interjections, see exclamations interrogatives §. 125 ff.; i. sentences §. 231 ff. intransitive verbs §. 111-113; 187 inverted order L. 3; §. 231 ff. irregular nouns L. 18. 11; §. 65; irregular weak verbs L. 19. 11; §. 16. languages, names of §. 92 manner, adverbs of §. 248 measure, nouns of §. 106 modal auxiliaries, see auxiliaries modes, see indicative, subjunctive, conditional, imperative months, names of §. 70 names, proper §. 66 ff.; n. of cities etc §. 107; n. of months, see months nominative §. 108 normal order L. 3; §. 231 ff. nouns L. 4-8; §. 58 ff. numerals L. 16; §. 147 ff. order of words L. 3; §. 231 ff. ordinals L. 16; §. 147 ff. passive voice L. 27; §. 175 ff. past tense §. 152

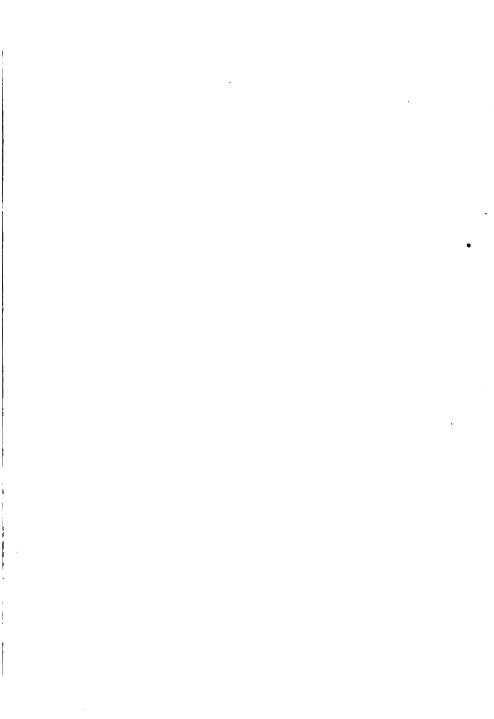
perfect §. 153

- person, congruence of §. 117; personal names, see names; p. pronouns L. 8; §. 118 ff.
- place of adverbs §. 247 ff.
- possessives L. 6. 12. 13; §. 50. 79 ff. 87 ff.
- predicate adjectives L. 10; §. 71-73; p. nouns denoting rank or profession L. 19. 11. n.²; §. 105
- prefixes of verbs L. 24. 25; §. 31 ff; accent of prefixes §. 35
- present tense §. 151; of certain strong verbs L. 20; §. 18
- prepositions L. 7; §. 220 ff.
- preterite, see past
- principal parts L. 17; §. 17
- progressive forms §. 149
- proper names, see names
- questions L. 1. 1. n. 2; §. 150
- reciprocal pronouns §. 40 [29. 39
- reflexive pronouns and verbs L. 28; §.

regular order, see normal order relatives L. 9; §. 125 ff. sentence, see order of words strong endings L. 10. 11; §. 48. 76; st verbs L. 2. 20; §. 4. 17 ff. subject acc. with infin. §. 164 ff. subjunctive L. 29. 30; §. 155 ff. subordinating conjunctions §. 230 substantive adjectives L. 15. II; §. 91 superlative L. 15; §. 94 ff.; 143 fr. tenses §. 151 ff. time, expressions of L. 16; §. 147 ff. titles §. 68 transposed order L. 3; §. 231. 240 verbs L. 17; §. 1-37; uses and constructions of verbs §. 149-187 vocative §. 108 weak endings L. 11; §. 48. 76; wk. verbs L. 2, 19; §. 11

words, order of, see order of words

.



SELECTED GERMAN TEXTS.

.

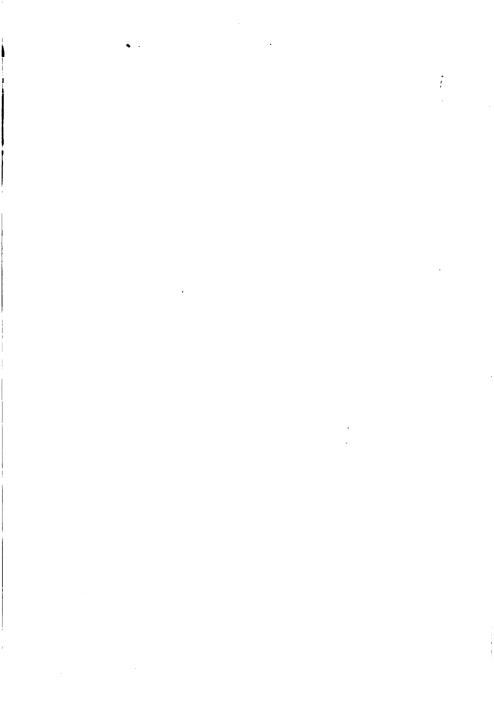
.. .

Bound in cloth unless otherwise indicated.

- SUDERMANN'S FRAU SORGE. A Romance. With introduction and notes by Prof. GUSTAVE GRUENER of Yale. With portrait. xx + 268 pp. 16mo. 8oc., wet.
- HAUPTMANN'S DIE VERSUNKENE GLOCKE. Ein deutsches Märchen-Drama. With introduction and notes by THOS. S. BAKER, Associate in the Johns Hopkins University. xviii+205 pp. 16mo. 8oc., net.
 "Probably the most remarkable play since Goethe's 'Faust."-Prof. H. C. G. Brandt of Hamilton College.
- SCHILLER'S HISTORY OF THE THIRTY YEARS' WAR. Selections portraying the careers and characters of Gustavus Adolphus and Wallenstein. Bdited, with introduction, notes, and map, by Prof. ARTHUR H. PALMER of Yale. XXXVII + 202 pp. 16mo. 8oc., net.
- SCHILLER'S WILHELM TELL. Edited, with introduction, notes, and a full vocabulary, by Prof. A. H. PALMER of Yale. Illustrated. lxxvi + 300 pp. 16mo. 80c., net. (Without vocabulary, 60c.)
- LESSING'S MINNA VON BARNHELM. Edited, with introduction and notes, by A. B. NICHOLS of Harvard. With 12 illustrations by Chodowiecki. xxx + 163 pp. 16mo. 60c., met.
- LESSING'S MINNA VON BARNHELM. With an introduction and notes by Prof. WILLIAM D. WHITNEY of Yale. New vocabulary edition. 191 pp. 16mo. 6oc., net.
- GOETHE'S DICHTUNG UND WAHRHEIT. Selections from Books I-IX. Edited, with introduction and notes, by Prof. H. C. G. von JAGE-MANN of Harvard. xiv + 373 pp. 16mo. \$1.12, #et.
- GOETHE'S GÖTZ VON BERLICHINGEN. Edited, with introduction and notes, by Prof. F. P. GOODRICH of Williams. xli + 170 pp. 16mo, 700., set.
- GOETHE'S HERMANN UND DOROTHEA. Edited, with introductior and notes, by Prof. CALVIN THOMAS of Columbia. New edition with vocabulary. xxii + 150 pp. Bds. 40C., net.
- JUNG-STILLING'S LEBENSGESCHICHTE. With introduction and vocabulary by SIGMON M. STERN. xxvi+285 pp. 12mo. \$1.20, net. A book giving intimate glimpses of Goethe.
- STERN'S AUS DEUTSCHEN MEISTERWERKEN (Nibelungen, Parcival, Gudrun, Tristan und Isolde). Erzählt von Sigmon M. Stern. With a full vocabulary. xxvii + 225 pp. 16mo. §1.30, net. A simple version of these great German legends.
- BAUMBACH'S, SOMMERMÄRCHEN, Eight stories, With introduction, notes, and vocabulary by Dr. Edward MEYER of Western Reserve University. vi + 142 pp. 16mo. Bds. 35c., net.
- ROSEGGER'S DIE SCHRIFTEN DES WALDSCHULMEISTERS. An authorized abridgment. Edited, with introduction and notes, by Prof. LAWRENCE FOSSLER of the University of Nebraska. With two poems by Baumbach and frontispiece. xii + 158 pp. Bds. 40c., net.
- REGENTS' GERMAN AND FRENCH POEMS FOR MEMORIZING. Prescribed by the Examinations Department of the University of the State of New York. Revised 1900. 98 pp. 12mo. Bds. 20C., net.

Descriptive List of the Publishers' Modern Language Books free.

HENRY HOLT & CO. 29 West 23d St., New York 378 Wabash Ave., Chicago



. • ·• •





•

•

•

•

.' . ٠

